

UNIVERSITY OF CALGARY

An investigation of the theoretical aspects of reversible computing

by

Brett Gordon Giles

A DISSERTATION

SUBMITTED TO THE FACULTY OF GRADUATE STUDIES  
IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE  
DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

DEPARTMENT OF COMPUTER SCIENCE

CALGARY, ALBERTA

July, 2014

© Brett Gordon Giles 2014

---

Associate Chairman,  
Dr. J.R.B. Cockett  
Department of Computer Science  
Thesis Supervisor

---

Dr. P. Selinger  
Department of Mathematics  
External Examiner

---

Date

# Abstract

# Acknowledgements

# Table of Contents

<b>Abstract</b>	ii
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	iii
Table of Contents	iv
List of Tables	vi
List of Figures	vii
List of Symbols	viii
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Summary	1
1.2 Background	1
1.2.1 Algebraic models of reversibility	2
1.2.2 Reversible languages	3
1.3 Objectives	5
1.4 Contributions	5
1.5 Outline	6
<b>2 Abstract Computability</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1 Categories	9
2.1.1 Properties of maps	9
2.1.2 Functors and natural transformations	12
2.1.3 Enrichment of categories	14
2.1.4 Examples of categories	14
2.1.5 Limits and colimits in categories	16
2.2 Restriction categories	19
2.2.1 Enrichment	21
2.2.2 Meets	23
2.2.3 Partial monics and isomorphisms	25
2.2.4 Range categories	28
2.2.5 Split restriction categories	30
2.2.6 Partial Map Categories	33
2.2.7 Restriction products and Cartesian restriction categories	35
2.2.8 Discrete Cartesian Restriction Categories	36
2.3 Dagger categories	40
2.3.1 Symmetric Monoidal Categories	40
2.3.2 Definitions	42
2.3.3 Examples of dagger categories	44
2.4 Frobenius Algebras	45
2.4.1 Frobenius algebra definitions	45
2.4.2 Bases and Frobenius Algebras	46
2.4.3 Quantum and classical data	48
<b>3 Inverse categories</b>	<b>50</b>
3.1 Inverse categories with restriction products	50
3.2 Inverse products	51
3.2.1 Inverse product definition	51

3.2.2	Diagrammatic Language . . . . .	53
3.2.3	Discrete inverse categories . . . . .	54
3.2.4	The inverse subcategory of a discrete restriction category . . . . .	59
3.3	The category of Commutative Frobenius Algebras . . . . .	61
3.4	Completing a discrete inverse category . . . . .	64
3.4.1	Equivalence classes of maps in $\mathbb{X}$ . . . . .	65
3.4.2	The restriction category $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ . . . . .	68
3.4.3	The category $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ is a discrete restriction category . . . . .	74
3.4.4	Equivalence of categories . . . . .	78
3.4.5	Examples of the $(-)$ construction . . . . .	83
4	Disjointness in Inverse Categories . . . . .	86
4.1	Coproducts in restriction categories . . . . .	86
4.1.1	Restriction Coproducts . . . . .	86
4.1.2	Inverse categories with restriction coproducts . . . . .	88
4.2	Disjointness in an inverse category . . . . .	88
4.2.1	Joins in restriction categories . . . . .	89
4.2.2	Disjointness relations . . . . .	90
4.3	Disjoint joins . . . . .	97
4.4	Monoidal Tensors for disjointness . . . . .	102
4.5	Disjointness in Frobenius Algebras . . . . .	119
5	Inverse sum categories . . . . .	123
5.1	Inverse sum categories . . . . .	123
5.1.1	Inverse sums . . . . .	123
5.1.2	Inverse sum tensor . . . . .	129
5.1.3	Matrices . . . . .	132
5.1.4	Equivalence between an inverse sum category and its matrix category . . . . .	139
5.2	Completing a distributive inverse category . . . . .	144
5.2.1	Distributive restriction categories . . . . .	144
5.2.2	Distributive inverse categories . . . . .	144
5.2.3	Discrete inverse categories with inverse sums . . . . .	149
6	Conclusions and future work . . . . .	155
6.1	Whither next? . . . . .	157
	Bibliography . . . . .	158

# List of Tables

2.1	Properties of Maps In Categories . . . . .	10
3.1	Two different inverse products on the same category. . . . .	54
3.2	Structural maps for the tensor in $Inv(\mathbb{X})$ . . . . .	60

# List of Figures and Illustrations

2.1	Pentagon diagram for associativity in an SMC. . . . .	40
2.2	Unit diagram and equation in an SMC. . . . .	40
2.3	Symmetry in an SMC. . . . .	41
2.4	Unit symmetry in an SMC. . . . .	41
2.5	Associativity symmetry in an SMC. . . . .	41
3.1	Co-commutativity for an inverse product. . . . .	52
3.2	Co-associativity for an inverse product. . . . .	52
3.3	Exchange in an inverse product. . . . .	52
3.4	Frobenius law in an inverse product. . . . .	53
3.5	Equivalence diagram for constructing maps in $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$ . . . . .	65



# List of Symbols, Abbreviations and Nomenclature

Symbol	Definition
$\overline{f}$	$\overline{f}$ is the restriction of $f$ , see Definition 2.2.1.
$\cup$	Set union.
$\cap$	Set intersection.
$\emptyset$	The empty set.
$\mathbb{X}, \mathbb{Y}, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{R}$	Categories, see Definition 2.1.1.
$\in$	Element of, in sets.
$\rightarrow$	Separate domain and range of a map.
$\mathbb{X}(A, B)$	Hom-Set in $\mathbb{X}$ . See Notation 2.1.16.
$\{x \text{condition on } x\}$	Define a set via a condition.
$\exists x.$	This means “there exists an $x$ such that”.
$\mathbb{N}$	The set of natural numbers, i.e., $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ .
$[a_{ij}]$	The matrix whose $i, j$ element is $a_{ij}$ .
$f^*, f_*$	A map dependent on $f$ . Retractions and sections.
$K_E(\mathbb{B})$	The Karoubi envelope. See Definition 2.1.5.
$\langle f, g \rangle$	The product map of $f, g$ . See Definition 2.1.26.
$A \times B$	The product of $A, B$ . See Definition 2.1.26.
$[f, g]$	The coproduct map of $f, g$ . See Definition 2.1.27.
$A + B$	The coproduct of $A, B$ . See Definition 2.1.27.
$A \boxplus B$	The biproduct of $A, B$ . See Definition 2.1.29.
$\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$	$\alpha$ is a natural transformation.
$\oplus, \otimes, \odot$	Tensors of categories.
$\uparrow$	Signifies that a function is undefined at some value.
$\leq$	An ordering relation.

$\mathcal{O}(( )A)$	Restriction idempotents of $A$ .
$\cap$	Meets of maps, see Definition 2.2.12.
$f^{(-1)}$	Partial inverse of $f$ , see Definition 2.2.15.
$A \triangleleft B$	$A$ is a retract of $B$ .
$\hat{f}$	$\hat{f}$ is the range of $f$ , see Definition 2.2.20.
$\top$	Restriction terminal object. See Definition 2.2.33.
$!$	The unique map to the restriction terminal object.
$\mathcal{M}$	A collection of monic maps.
$\forall X,$	For all $X$ .
$f^\dagger$	Apply the functor $\dagger$ to $f$ .
$\implies$	Implies.
$\mathbb{C}$	The field of complex numbers.
$f \smile g$	$f$ is compatible with $g$ . See Definition 3.1.1.
$f \xrightarrow{\cong} g$	$f$ is isomorphic to $g$ .
$\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$	The completion of the discrete inverse category $\mathbb{X}$ .
$f \xrightarrow{h} g$	$f$ is equivalent to $g$ . See Definition 3.4.2.
$(f, C)$	Equivalence class of maps $f : A \rightarrow B \otimes C$ .
$f : A \rightarrow B _C$	Alternate way to write $(f, C) : A \rightarrow B$ .
$\doteq$	Defines the left hand side as the right hand side.
$?$	The unique map from the initial object.
$f \vee g$	The join of $f, g$ . See Definition 4.2.1.
$\perp$	Disjointness relationship. See Definition 4.2.4.
$ocdperp$	Open disjointness. See Definition 4.2.7.
$\sqcup$	Disjoint join. See Definition 4.3.1.
$\uplus$	The disjoint union of sets.
$f \nabla g$	Partial operation on $f, g$ . See Definition 4.4.7.

$f \triangle g$

Partial operation on  $f, g$ . See Definition 4.4.7.

$\perp_{\oplus}$

Disjointness relation defined by disjointness tensor.

$\sqcup_{\oplus}$

Disjoint join defined by disjoint sum tensor.

$\Longleftrightarrow$

If and only if.

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 Summary

A “quantum” setting has a fundamental duality given by the dagger of dagger categories [1,47]. On the other hand, classical computation is fundamentally asymmetric in this regard. In passing to a more classical setting, one may want to keep this symmetry for as long as possible and thus consider the intermediate step of passing to “reversible” computation — which has an obvious self-duality. It is reasonable to wonder then whether one can then pass to the classical setting independently. Such an abstract passage would allow a direct translation into the reversible world of classical notions.

Of course, in the quantum setting, it is already possible to pass directly to a classical setting by taking the homomorphisms between special coalgebras, where “special” means the coalgebra must be the comultiplication of a separable coalgebra. That the coalgebra should be special in this manner may be justified by regarding this as a two step process through reversible computation. However, this leaves some gaps: How does one pass, in general, between a quantum setting to a reversible setting and how does one obtain a classical setting from a reversible setting? This thesis answers those questions.

### 1.2 Background

The semantics of reversible computing has been examined in a variety of ways. Broadly, they may be broken into two classes. The first class consists of those that introduce a reversible language and then describe the semantics of that language in some way. Examples of this include Zuliani, [50] and Mu et.al., [39]. The second class focuses on some algebraic model

and then introduces reversibility to that model. Examples of this include Abramsky [2], Di Pierro et.al. [43], Danos and Krivine [20] and Phillips and Uladowski [42].

Reversible computing, at the level of Turing machines, was shown to be equivalent to standard computing by Bennet [6] in 1973. Since approximately 2000, there has been an increased interest in reversible computing. This may have been engendered by the obvious relationship to Quantum computing (e.g., [40]) where computation is done by a series of unitary transforms, each of which is reversible, followed by an irreversible measurement.

An important aspect of the treatment of reversible computing is the consideration of partiality in programs, i.e., it is possible for programs to not return an answer for certain inputs. The above references consider partiality to a greater or lesser degree, but none of them treat it as a central consideration.

Partiality was shown to have an algebraic treatment, restriction categories, by Cockett and Lack in [14–16]. The algebraic treatment consists of an operator on maps, denoted by a bar over the map, such that for a map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in a category, then  $\bar{f} : A \rightarrow A$  is an idempotent map in the category. Full details are given here in Section 2.2.

In much of the research on reversibility, specific conditions are placed on some aspect of the computational model or reversible language to ensure “programs” in this model are reversible. Due to the variety of models and languages it is unclear what are the common threads of these restrictions. We contend that our treatment of the theory of reversibility will provide the basis to show relationships between a variety of approaches.

### 1.2.1 Algebraic models of reversibility

In [2], Abramsky considers bi-orthogonal automata as his computational model. (An automata is considered orthogonal if it is non-ambiguous and left-linear. It is bi-orthogonal when both the automata and its converse are both orthogonal). Abramsky then builds a bridge from partial injective and involutive functions to these automata. To show universality, specific constructions of bi-orthogonal automata are provided which create a Linear

Combinatory Algebra [4].

In [20], Danos and Krivine extend CCS (Calculus for Communicating Systems) [35,36] to produces RCCS, which adds reversible transitions to CCS. This is done by adding a syntax for backtracking, together with a labelling which guides the backtracking. The interesting aspect of this paper is the applicability to multi-processor programs.

Phillips and Uladowski [42] take a different approach to creating a reversible CCS from that of Danos and Krivine. Rather, their stated goal is to use a structural approach, inspired by [2]. The paper is only an initial step in this process, primarily explaining how to turn dynamic rules (such as choice operators) into a series of static rules that keep all the information of the input. For example (from the paper), in standard CCS, we have the rule

$$\frac{X \rightarrow X'}{X + Y \rightarrow X'}.$$

To preserve information and allow reversibility, this is replaced with

$$\frac{X \rightarrow X'}{X + Y \rightarrow X' + Y}.$$

### 1.2.2 Reversible languages

Early examples of reversible languages include Janus [33], an imperative language written as an experiment in producing a language that did not erase information. We were unable to find any evidence of a semantics for this language.

Additionally, there are special purpose reversible languages, such as biXid [30], a language developed explicitly to transform XML [7] from one schema to another. The main novelty of biXid is that a single program targets two schemas and will transform in either direction.

In the realm of languages which possess an explicit semantics, we start with Zuliani [50], who examines logical reversibility via extending *pGCL* [37] and comparing to *qGCL* [44]. Zuliani provides a method for transforming an irreversible *pGCL* program into a reversible one. This is accomplished via an application of expectation transform semantics to the *pGCL* program. Interestingly, partial programs are specifically excluded from the definition

of reversible programs. The initial definition of a reversible program is strict, i.e., the program is equivalent to *skip* which does nothing. To alleviate this and allow us to extract the output, Zuliani follows the example of [6] and modifies the result so that the output is copied before reversing the rest of the program.

In [38] and [39], Mu et.al. introduce the language **Inv**, a language that is composed only of partial injective functions. The language has an operational semantics based on relations and converses. They provide a variety of examples of the language, including translations from XML to HTML and simple functions such as *wrap*, which wraps its argument into a list. They continue by describing how non-injective functions may be converted to injective ones in **Inv** via the addition of logging. In fact, they use this logging to argue the language is equivalent in terms of power to the reversible Turing machine of [6].

The approach of Mu et.al. is a good example of a specific case which is describable by the theory presented in this Thesis. Their approach of insisting on injective functions is a specific case of an inverse category. When given two functions  $f, g$  of **Inv**, constructing their union,  $f \cup g$  requires that both  $\text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g = \emptyset$  and  $\text{range } f \cap \text{range } g = \emptyset$ . This is an explicit creation of a disjoint join as introduced in Section 4.3.

A more recent entry into the field of reversible languages is that of Theseus, [28], by Sabry and James. Theseus is a functional language which compiles to  $\Pi^0$  as presented in [27]. The language  $\Pi^0$  is based on  $\Pi$  [26].  $\Pi$  is a graphical language for reversible computation, based on isomorphisms of finite sums and products of types. Their chosen isomorphisms include commutativity and associativity for sums and products, units for product and distributivity of product over sums.  $\Pi^0$  extends this with recursive types and looping operators and therefore introduces partiality due to the possibility of non-terminating loops.

The basis of  $\Pi^0$  is reminiscent of what we produce in this thesis, however, our approach differs significantly in focusing first on partiality and the expressiveness this gives us, rather than building a specific language.

Finally, we note there are a number of quantum programming languages which, as noted, included reversible operations. Our first example is LQPL [21], a compiled language based on the semantics of [45]. The language includes a variety of reversible operations (unitary transforms) as primitives, a linear type system and an operational semantics. A more recent entry is Quipper, [22, 23] a language embedded in Haskell [41]. Quipper uses quantum *and* classical circuits as an underlying model. An interesting aspect of reversibility in Quipper is the inclusion of an operator to compute the reverse of a given circuit.

### 1.3 Objectives

Based upon our review of current research as noted in Section 1.2, reversibility lacks a unifying semantic model. Standard computing has Cartesian closed categories [5], while quantum computing has had much success with dagger compact closed categories [1, 46, 47].

In this thesis, we will present a type of restriction category which abstracts partial reversible computations in as general a way as possible. We will show this category admits product-like and sum-like structures. We will also show this type of restriction category is equivalent to a specific type of Cartesian restriction category, showing there is a relation to standard computing models.

### 1.4 Contributions

The initial contribution of this thesis is the characterization of inverse categories with restriction products and restriction coproducts. We show in Proposition 3.1.3 and Proposition 4.1.5 that each of products and coproducts impose a trivialization of the structure of the base category.

The main contributions of this thesis are:

1. The definition and characterization of the inverse product in an inverse cate-



- gory (known as a discrete inverse category) and showing that it provides meets for the inverse category.
2. The creation of an equivalence relation on a discrete inverse category and showing that the category resulting from factoring out the equivalence relation is a discrete Cartesian restriction category.
  3. Showing that the category of discrete inverse categories is equivalent to the category of discrete Cartesian restriction categories.
  4. The development of disjointness relations and disjoint joins in inverse categories and how they arise from suitable monoids over the inverse category.
  5. Showing that inverse categories with disjoint joins and restriction zeroes (called inverse sum categories) give rise to a matrix category and that the original inverse sum category is equivalent to the matrix category.
  6. The proof that a distributive inverse category (one with inverse products and disjoint joins where the inverse product distributes over the disjoint join) gives a distributive restriction category when factoring out the equivalence relation from Item 2 above.

## 1.5 Outline

We assume a knowledge of basic algebra including definitions and properties of groups, rings, fields, vector spaces and matrices. The reader may consult [32] if further details are needed.

Chapter 2 introduces the various concepts that will be used throughout this thesis. The basics of category theory are reviewed in Section 2.1 followed by an introduction to restriction categories in Section 2.2. Section 2.3 and Section 2.4 introduce dagger categories and

Frobenius algebras respectively. These constructs are of particular interest in the study of quantum semantics and will provide a source of examples for us.

Chapter 3 starts with showing that inverse categories with a restriction product collapses to a restriction pre-order, that is, all parallel maps agree wherever they are both defined. Section 3.2 introduces the concept of inverse products and explores the properties of the inverse product. We call inverse categories with inverse products *discrete inverse categories*. A major example of discrete inverse categories, commutative Frobenius algebras, is then introduced in Section 3.3. Section 3.4 then presents how to construct a Cartesian restriction category based on a discrete inverse category. This culminates in Theorem 3.4.18 giving an equivalence adjunction between discrete inverse categories and discrete Cartesian restriction categories, which were introduced in Sub-Section 2.2.8.

Having explored how to introduce a product-like construction in an inverse category, Chapter 4 begins the exploration of how to add a coproduct-like construction. Paralleling the previous chapter, in Section 4.1 we show that restriction coproducts impose an even greater amount of structure on an inverse category. The existence of a restriction coproduct implies that an inverse category must be a pre-order, i.e., that all parallel maps are equal. Section 4.2 starts with a quick review of joins in restriction categories, followed by defining a disjointness relation in an inverse category. We show that disjointness may be defined on all maps or equivalently only on the restriction idempotents of the inverse category. This allows us to now define the disjoint join in Section 4.3. We then conclude this chapter with Section 4.4 showing how specific conditions on a symmetric monoidal tensor in an inverse category allow us to define both a disjointness relation and a disjoint join from that tensor.

Chapter 5 builds upon the previous chapters to introduce coproduct-like constructions into the inverse category. Section 4.5 starts by expanding the example of commutative Frobenius algebras, showing there is a disjointness relation in them. In Section 5.1 we explore the relationship between disjoint joins and inverse sums. This culminates in showing that

an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a tensor generating disjoint joins gives rise to a matrix category over  $\mathbb{X}$  and that  $\mathbb{X}$  is equivalent to its matrix category. Finally, in Section 5.2 we show that the construction introduced in Section 3.4 also lifts an inverse sum up to a coproduct and in fact will create a distributive restriction category when the inverse product distributes over the disjoint join.

Our conclusions and thoughts for potentially interesting areas to explore further are then given in Chapter 6.

# Chapter 2

## Abstract Computability

### 2.1 Categories

This section introduces categories and fixes notation for them. More details can be found in various books or online resources for category theory, e.g., [34], [13], [5] and [49].

A category may be defined in a variety of equivalent ways. As much of our work will involve the exploration of partial and reversible maps, their domains and codomains, we choose a definition that highlights the algebraic nature of these.

**Definition 2.1.1.** A *category*  $\mathbb{A}$  is a directed graph consisting of objects  $A_o$  and maps  $A_m$ . Each  $f \in A_m$  has two associated objects in  $A_o$ , called the domain and codomain. When  $f$  has domain  $X$  and codomain  $Y$  we will write  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ . For  $f, g \in A_m$ , if  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , there is a map called the *composite* of  $f$  and  $g$ , written  $fg$ ,<sup>1</sup> such that  $fg : X \rightarrow Z$ . For any  $W \in A_o$  there is an *identity* map  $1_W : W \rightarrow W$ . Additionally, these two axioms must hold:

$$[\mathbf{C.1}] \text{ for } f : X \rightarrow Y, 1_X f = f = f 1_Y,$$

$$[\mathbf{C.2}] \text{ given } f : X \rightarrow Y, g : Y \rightarrow Z \text{ and } h : Z \rightarrow W, \text{ then } f(gh) = (fg)h.$$

#### 2.1.1 Properties of maps

Many interesting properties of maps are generalizations of notions that have been found useful in considering sets and functions. We present a few of these in a tabular format, together with their categorical definition. Throughout Table 2.1,  $e, f, g$  are maps in a category  $C$  with  $e : A \rightarrow A$  and  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$ .

---

<sup>1</sup>Note that composition is written in diagrammatic order throughout this paper.

Sets	Categorical Property	Definition
Injective	Monic	$f$ is monic whenever $hf = kf$ means that $h = k$ .
Surjective	Epic	The dual notion to monic, $g$ is epic whenever $gh = gk$ means that $h = k$ . A map that is both monic and epic is called <i>bijic</i> .
Left Inverse	Section	$f$ is a section when there is a map $f^*$ such that $ff^* = 1_A$ . $f$ is also referred to as the <i>left inverse</i> of $f^*$ .
Right Inverse	Retraction	$f$ is a retraction when there is a map $f_*$ such that $f_*f = 1_B$ . $f$ is also referred to as the <i>right inverse</i> of $f_*$ . A map that is both a section and a retraction is called an <i>isomorphism</i> .
Idempotent	Idempotent	An endomorphism $e$ is idempotent whenever $ee = e$ .

**Table 2.1:** Properties of Maps In Categories

We state without proof a number of properties of maps.

**Lemma 2.1.2.** *In a category  $\mathbb{B}$ ,*

- (i) *If  $f, g$  are monic, then  $fg$  is monic.*
- (ii) *If  $fg$  is monic, then  $f$  is monic.*
- (iii)  *$f$  being a section means it is monic.*
- (iv)  *$f, g$  sections implies that  $fg$  is a section.*
- (v)  *$fg$  a section means  $f$  is a section.*

**Lemma 2.1.3.** *If  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is both a section and a retraction, then  $f^* = f_*$ , where  $f^*$  and  $f_*$  are as defined in Table 2.1.*

**Lemma 2.1.4.**  *$f$  is an isomorphism if and only if it is an epic section.*

Note there are corresponding properties for epics and retractions, obtained by dualizing the statements of Lemma 2.1.2 and Lemma 2.1.4.

Suppose  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a retraction with left inverse  $f_* : B \rightarrow A$ . Note that  $ff_*$  is idempotent as  $ff_*ff_* = f1_Bf_* = ff_*$ . If we are given an idempotent  $e$ , we say  $e$  is *split* if there is a retraction  $f$  with  $e = ff_*$ .

In general, not all idempotents in a category will split. The following construction allows us to create a category based on the original one in which all idempotents do split.

**Definition 2.1.5.** Given a category  $\mathbb{B}$  and a set of idempotents  $E$  of  $\mathbb{B}$ , we may create  $Split_E(\mathbb{B})$ . As this is called the Karoubi envelope, this is normally written as  $K_E(\mathbb{B})$ , and defined as:

**Objects:**  $(A, e)$ , where  $A$  is an object of  $\mathbb{B}$ ,  $e : A \rightarrow A$  and  $e \in E$ ;

**Maps:**  $f_{d,e} : (A, d) \rightarrow (B, e)$  is given by  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , where  $f = dfe$ ;

**Identity:** The map  $e_{e,e}$  for  $(A, e)$ ;

**Composition:** Inherited from  $\mathbb{B}$ .

When  $E$  is the set of all idempotents in  $\mathbb{B}$ , we write  $K(\mathbb{B})$ .

This is the standard idempotent splitting construction, variously known as the Karoubi envelope or Cauchy completion.

**Lemma 2.1.6.** *Given a category  $\mathbb{B}$ , then it is a full sub-category of  $K(\mathbb{B})$  and all idempotents split in  $K(\mathbb{B})$ .*

*Proof.* We identify each object  $A$  in  $\mathbb{B}$  with the object  $(A, 1)$  in  $K(\mathbb{B})$ . The only maps between  $(A, 1)$  and  $(B, 1)$  in  $K(\mathbb{B})$  are the maps between  $A$  and  $B$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , hence we have a full sub-category.

Suppose we have the map  $d_{e,e} : (A, e) \rightarrow (A, e)$  with  $dd = d$ , i.e., it is idempotent in  $C$  and  $K(\mathbb{B})$ . In  $K(\mathbb{B})$ , we have the maps  $d_{e,d} : (A, e) \rightarrow (A, d)$  and  $d_{d,e} : (A, d) \rightarrow (A, e)$  where  $d_{d,e}d_{e,d} = d_{d,d} = 1_{(A,d)}$  and  $d_{e,d}d_{d,e} = d_{e,e}$ . Hence, it is a splitting of the map  $d_{e,e}$ .  $\square$

### 2.1.2 Functors and natural transformations

**Definition 2.1.7.** A map  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  between categories, as in Definition 2.1.1, is called a *functor*, provided it satisfies the following:

$$[\mathbf{F.1}] \quad F(D(f)) = D(F(f)) \text{ and } F(C(f)) = C(F(f));$$

$$[\mathbf{F.2}] \quad F(fg) = F(f)F(g);$$

**Lemma 2.1.8.** *The collection of categories and functors form the category CAT.*

*Proof.* **Objects:** Categories.

**Maps:** Functors.

**Identity:** The identity functor which takes an object to the same object and a map to the same map.

**Composition:**  $FG(x) = F(G(x))$  which is clearly associative.

□

**Definition 2.1.9.** A functor  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  is *faithful* when for each pair of objects  $A, B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ , and map  $g : FA \rightarrow FB$  in  $\mathbb{Y}$ , there is a map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  such that  $Ff = g$ .

**Definition 2.1.10.** A functor  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  is *full* when for parallel maps  $f, f'$ , if  $Ff = Ff'$  then  $f = f'$ .

We may also consider the notion of containment between categories/

**Definition 2.1.11.** Given the categories  $\mathbb{B}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$ , we say that  $\mathbb{B}$  is a *sub-category* of  $\mathbb{D}$  when each object of  $\mathbb{B}$  is an object of  $\mathbb{D}$  and when each map of  $\mathbb{B}$  is a map of  $\mathbb{D}$ .

When  $\mathbb{B}$  is a subcategory of  $\mathbb{D}$ , the functor  $J : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  which takes each object to itself in  $\mathbb{D}$  and each map to itself in  $\mathbb{D}$  is called the inclusion functor. When  $J$  is a full functor, we say  $\mathbb{B}$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathbb{D}$ .

Functors with two arguments, e.g.,  $F : \mathbf{SETS} \times \mathbf{SETS} \rightarrow \mathbf{SETS}$  which satisfy [F.1] and [F.2] for each argument independently are called *bi-functors*.

We will often restrict ourselves to specific classes of functors which either *preserve* or *reflect* certain characteristics of the domain category or codomain category. To be more precise, we provide some definitions.

**Definition 2.1.12.** Given a category  $\mathbb{S}$ , a *diagram* in a category  $\mathbb{B}$  of *shape*  $\mathbb{S}$  is a functor  $D : \mathbb{S} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$ .

**Definition 2.1.13.** A *property* of a diagram  $D$ , written  $P(D)$  is a logical relation expressed using the objects and maps of the diagram  $D$ .

For example,  $P(f : A \rightarrow B) = \exists h : B \rightarrow A. hf = 1_A$  expresses that  $f$  is a retraction.

**Definition 2.1.14.** A functor  $F$  *preserves* the property  $P$  over maps  $f_i$  and objects  $A_j$  when  $P(f_1, \dots, f_n, A_1, \dots, A_m)$  implies  $P(F(f_1), \dots, F(f_n), F(A_1), \dots, F(A_m))$ . A functor  $F$  *reflects* the property  $P$  over maps  $f_i$  and objects  $A_j$  when  $P(F(f_1), \dots, F(f_n), F(A_1), \dots, F(A_m))$  implies  $P(f_1, \dots, f_n, A_1, \dots, A_m)$ .

For example, all functors preserve the properties of being an idempotent or a retraction or section, but in general, not the property of being monic.

A functor  $F : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  induces a map between hom-sets in  $\mathbb{B}$  and hom-sets in  $\mathbb{D}$ . For each object  $A, B$  in  $\mathbb{B}$  we have the map:

$$F_{AB} : \mathbb{B}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathbb{D}(F(A), F(B)).$$

**Definition 2.1.15.** Given functors  $F, G : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$ , a *natural transformation*  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  is a collection of maps in  $\mathbb{Y}$ ,  $\alpha_X : F(X) \rightarrow G(X)$ , indexed by the objects of  $\mathbb{X}$  such that for all  $f : X_1 \rightarrow X_2$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  the following diagram in  $\mathbb{Y}$  commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X_1) & \xrightarrow{F(f)} & F(X_2) \\ \alpha_{X_1} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{X_2} \\ G(X_1) & \xrightarrow{G(f)} & G(X_2) \end{array}$$



### 2.1.3 Enrichment of categories

**Notation 2.1.16.** If  $\mathbb{X}$  is a category, then the maps from  $A$  to  $B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  are represented as  $\mathbb{X}(A, B)$ .

If  $\mathbb{X}(A, B)$  is a set for all objects in  $\mathbb{X}$ , we say  $\mathbb{X}$  is *enriched* in sets. In general, categories may be enriched in a variety of algebraic structures. For example a category may be enriched in groups, vector spaces or monoids.

Specific types of enrichment may force a structure on a category. For example, if  $\mathbb{X}$  is enriched in sets of cardinality of 0 or 1, then  $\mathbb{X}$  must be a pre-order.

**Example 2.1.17.** A group  $G$  may be considered as a one-object category  $\mathbb{G}$ , with object  $\{*\}$ . The elements of the group are the maps between  $\{*\}$ . As  $G$  is a group, there is an identity, composition is given by the group multiplication and additionally, each map has an inverse. As  $\mathbb{G}(\{*\}, \{*\}) = G$ , this category is enriched in groups.

### 2.1.4 Examples of categories

In this section, we will offer a few examples of categories. Four categories derived from sets are:

**Example 2.1.18 (SETS).** In this category, the maps are given by all set functions.

**Objects:** Sets;

**Maps:** Set functions;

**Identity:** The identity function;

**Composition:** Standard composition of functions.

**Example 2.1.19 (PAR).** For this example, the maps are all partial set functions.

**Objects:** Sets;

**Maps:** Partial set functions;

**Identity:** The identity function;

**Composition:** Standard composition of functions.

**Example 2.1.20** (REL). REL is often of interest in quantum programming language semantics:

**Objects:** All sets;

**Maps:** Relations:  $R : X \rightarrow Y$ ;

**Identity:**  $1_X = \{(x, x) | x \in X\}$ ;

**Composition:**  $RS = \{(x, z) | \exists y. (x, y) \in R \text{ and } (y, z) \in S\}$ .

Note that REL is enriched in posets, via set inclusion. PAR can be viewed as a subcategory of REL, with the same objects, but only allowing maps which are partial functions, i.e., deterministic relation where if  $(x, y), (x, y') \in f$ , then  $y = y'$ . PAR is also enriched in posets, via the same inclusion ordering as in REL.

**Example 2.1.21** (PINJ). Our final example based on sets is one that will be used throughout this thesis. The category PINJ consists of the partial injective functions over sets. Similarly to PAR, it may be considered as a subcategory of REL. The maps  $f, g$  (relations in REL) in PINJ are defined as follows:

$$(x, y) \in f \text{ and } (x, y') \in f \text{ implies } y = y', \quad (2.1)$$

$$(x, y) \in f \text{ and } (x', y) \in f \text{ implies } x = x'. \quad (2.2)$$

**Objects:** All sets;

**Maps:** Relations:  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  which satisfy Equation (2.1) and Equation (2.2).;

**Identity:**  $1_X = \{(x, x) | x \in X\}$ ;

**Composition:**  $fg = \{(x, z) | \exists y. (x, y) \in f \text{ and } (y, z) \in g\}$ .

Our next example shows maps in categories need not always be something normally thought of as a function or relation.

**Example 2.1.22** (Matrix Category). Given a rig  $R$  (i.e., a ring minus **n**egatives, e.g., the natural numbers), one may form the category  $\text{MAT}(R)$ . For example, the category of matrices of natural numbers is:

**Objects:**  $\mathbb{N}$ ;

**Maps:**  $[r_{ij}] : n \rightarrow m$  where  $[r_{ij}]$  is an  $n \times m$  matrix over  $R$ ;

**Identity:**  $I_n$ ;

**Composition:** Matrix multiplication.

Our last example describes a construction on a category.

**Example 2.1.23** (Dual Category). Given a category  $\mathbb{B}$ , we may form the *dual* of  $\mathbb{B}$ , written  $\mathbb{B}^{op}$  as the following category:

**Objects:** The objects of  $\mathbb{B}$ ;

**Maps:**  $f^{op} : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathbb{B}^{op}$  when  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ .;

**Identity:** The identity maps of  $\mathbb{B}$ ;

**Composition:** If  $fg = h$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ ,  $g^{op}f^{op} = h^{op}$ .

### 2.1.5 Limits and colimits in categories

We shall discuss only a few basic limits/colimits in categories. First we discuss initial and terminal objects.

**Definition 2.1.24.** An *initial object* in a category  $\mathbb{B}$  is an object which has exactly one map to each other object in the category. The dual notion is *terminal object* which has exactly one map from each other object in the category.

**Lemma 2.1.25.** Suppose  $I, J$  are initial objects in  $\mathbb{B}$ . Then there is a unique isomorphism  $i : I \rightarrow J$ .

*Proof.* First, note that by definition there is only one map from  $I$  to  $I$  — which must be the identity map. As  $I$  is initial there is a map  $i : I \rightarrow J$ . As  $J$  is initial there is a map  $j : J \rightarrow I$ . But this means  $ij : I \rightarrow I = 1$  and  $ji : J \rightarrow J = 1$  and hence  $i$  is the unique isomorphism from  $I$  to  $J$ .  $\square$

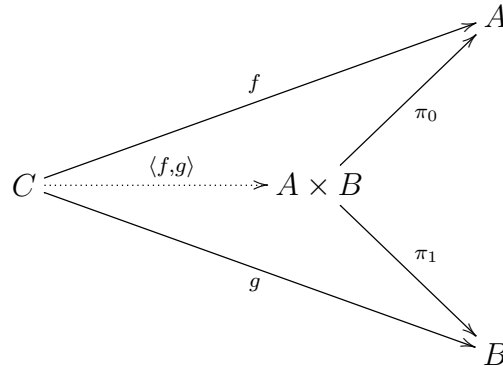
Dually, we have the corresponding result to Lemma 2.1.25 for terminal objects — they are also unique up to a unique isomorphism.

In categories, following the terminology in sets, we normally designate the initial object by 0 and the terminal object by 1.

We now turn to products and co-products.

**Definition 2.1.26.** Let  $A, B$  be objects of the category  $\mathbb{B}$ . Then the object  $A \times B$  is a *product* of  $A$  and  $B$  when:

- There exist maps  $\pi_0, \pi_1$  with  $\pi_0 : A \times B \rightarrow A$ ,  $\pi_1 : A \times B \rightarrow B$ ;
- Given an object  $C$  with maps  $f : C \rightarrow A$  and  $g : C \rightarrow B$  there is a unique map  $\langle f, g \rangle$  such that the following diagram commutes:



A co-product is the dual of a product.

**Definition 2.1.27.** Let  $A, B$  be objects of the category  $\mathbb{B}$ . Then the object  $A + B$  is a *coproduct* of  $A$  and  $B$  when:

- There exist maps  $\Pi_1, \Pi_2$  with  $\Pi_1 : A \rightarrow A + B$ ,  $\Pi_2 : B \rightarrow A + B$ ;
- Given an object  $C$  with maps  $h : A \rightarrow C$  and  $k : B \rightarrow C$  there is a unique map  $[f, g]$  such that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & A & & & \\
 & \downarrow \Pi_1 & \searrow h & & \\
 A & & & & C \\
 & \uparrow \Pi_2 & \nearrow k & \text{---} [f, g] \text{---} & \\
 & B & & & 
 \end{array}$$

It is possible for an object to both a limit and a co-limit at the same time.

**Definition 2.1.28.** Given a category  $\mathbb{B}$ , any object that is both a terminal and initial object is called a *zero object*. This object is labelled  $\mathbf{0}$ .

Note that any category with a zero object has a special map,  $\mathbf{0}_{A,B}$  between any two objects  $A, B$  of the category given by:  $\mathbf{0}_{A,B} : A \rightarrow \mathbf{0} \rightarrow B$ .

**Definition 2.1.29.** In a category  $\mathbb{B}$ , with products and coproducts, where:

$$\Pi_i \Pi_j = \begin{cases} 1 & i = j \\ 0 & i \neq j \end{cases}$$

and given any two objects,  $A, B$ ,  $A \times B$  is isomorphic to  $A + B$ , then  $A \times B$  is referred to as the *biproduct* and designated as  $A \boxplus B$ .

**Definition 2.1.30.** A category  $\mathbb{D}$  is said to have *finite biproducts* when it has a zero object  $\mathbf{0}$  and when each pair of objects  $A, B$  have a biproduct  $A \boxplus B$ .

Note that a category with finite biproducts is enriched in commutative monoids. If  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$ , define  $f + g : A \rightarrow B$  as  $\langle id_A, id_A \rangle (f \boxplus g) [id_B, id_B]$ . The unit for the addition is  $\mathbf{0}_{A,B}$ . Throughout this thesis, when working in a category with finite biproducts,  $\langle id, id \rangle$  will be designated by  $\Delta$  and  $[id, id]$  will be designated by  $\nabla$ .

## 2.2 Restriction categories

Restriction categories were introduced in [14] as a way to give an algebraic axiomatization of partial maps.

**Definition 2.2.1.** A *restriction category* is a category  $\mathbb{X}$  together with a *restriction operator* on maps,

$$\frac{f : A \rightarrow B}{\bar{f} : A \rightarrow A},$$

where  $f$  is a map of  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $A, B$  are objects of  $\mathbb{X}$ , such that the following four *restriction identities* hold, whenever the compositions are defined:

$$[\mathbf{R.1}] \quad \bar{f}f = f$$

$$[\mathbf{R.2}] \quad \bar{g}\bar{f} = \overline{fg}$$

$$[\mathbf{R.3}] \quad \overline{\bar{f}g} = \bar{f}\bar{g}$$

$$[\mathbf{R.4}] \quad f\bar{g} = \overline{fgf}.$$

**Definition 2.2.2.** A *restriction functor* is a functor which preserves the restriction. That is, given a functor  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  with  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $\mathbb{Y}$  restriction categories,  $F$  is a restriction functor if:

$$F(\bar{f}) = \overline{F(f)}.$$

Note that any map such that  $r = \bar{r}$  is an idempotent, as  $rr = \bar{r}r = r$ . Such a map is called a *restriction idempotent*.

Here are some basic facts ([14] and [17]) for restriction categories.

**Lemma 2.2.3.** In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ ,

$$(i) \quad \bar{f} \text{ is idempotent};$$

$$(v) \quad \bar{f}\bar{g} = \overline{\bar{f}g};$$

$$(ii) \quad \bar{f}g = \overline{fg}\bar{f};$$

$$(vi) \quad f \text{ monic implies } \bar{f} = 1;$$

$$(iii) \quad \bar{f}g = \overline{f\bar{g}};$$

$$(vii) \quad f = \bar{g}f \implies \bar{g}\bar{f} = \bar{f}.$$

$$(iv) \quad \overline{\bar{f}} = \bar{f};$$

*Proof.*

- (i) Using [R.3] and then [R.1], we see  $\overline{f} \overline{f} = \overline{\overline{f} f} = \overline{f}$ .
- (ii) Using [R.1], [R.3] and then [R.2],  $\overline{f g} = \overline{\overline{f} f g} = \overline{f} \overline{f g} = \overline{f g} f$ .
- (iii) Using (ii), [R.3] and then [R.4],  $\overline{f g} = \overline{f g} \overline{f} = \overline{\overline{f g} f} = \overline{f g}$ .
- (iv) By (iii),  $\overline{f} = \overline{1 f} = \overline{1} \overline{f} = \overline{f}$ .
- (v) Using [R.3],  $\overline{\overline{f} \overline{g}} = \overline{f \overline{g}} = \overline{f} \overline{g}$ .
- (vi) By [R.1]  $\overline{f} f = 1 f$ , hence when  $f$  is monic,  $\overline{f} = 1$ .
- (vii)  $\overline{g} \overline{f} = \overline{g f} = \overline{f}$ .

□

Note that by Lemma 2.2.3, all maps  $\overline{f}$  are restriction idempotents as  $\overline{f} = \overline{\overline{f}}$ .

**Definition 2.2.4.** A map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in a restriction category is said to be *total* when  $\overline{f} = 1_A$ .

**Lemma 2.2.5.** The total maps in a restriction category form a sub-category  $Total(\mathbb{X}) \subseteq \mathbb{X}$ .

*Proof.* First, as the identity map  $1$  is monic, by Lemma 2.2.3, we have  $\overline{1} = 1$  and therefore the identity map is in  $Total(\mathbb{X})$ . If  $f, g$  are composable maps in  $Total(\mathbb{X})$ , then  $\overline{f g} = \overline{f g} = \overline{f} = 1$  and hence  $f g$  is in  $Total(\mathbb{X})$ . Therefore,  $Total(\mathbb{X})$  is a sub-category of  $\mathbb{X}$ . □

**Example 2.2.6 (PAR).** Continuing from Example 2.1.19, PAR is a restriction category. The restriction of  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is:

$$\overline{f}(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } f(x) \text{ is defined,} \\ \uparrow & \text{if } f(x) \text{ is } \uparrow. \end{cases}$$

In PAR, the total maps correspond precisely to the functions that are defined on all elements of the domain.

**Example 2.2.7** (REL). The category REL from Example 2.1.20 is a restriction category with the restriction of  $R = \{(a, b)\}$  being  $\overline{R} = \{(a, a) | \exists b. (a, b) \in R\}$ .

**Example 2.2.8** (PINJ). From Example 2.1.21, we see PINJ is a restriction category and in fact is a sub-restriction category of REL. We will show the four restriction axioms:

$$[\mathbf{R.1}] \quad \overline{f}f = \{(x, z) | \exists x. (x, x) \in \overline{f} \text{ and } (x, z) \in f\} = \{(x, z) | (x, z) \in f\} = f,$$

$$[\mathbf{R.2}] \quad \overline{f}\overline{g} = \{(x, z) | \exists y. (x, y) \in \overline{f} \text{ and } (y, z) \in \overline{g}\} = \{(x, x) | (x, x) \in \overline{f} \text{ and } (x, x) \in \overline{g}\} = \overline{g}\overline{f},$$

$$[\mathbf{R.3}] \quad \overline{\overline{f}g} = \overline{\{(x, y) | (x, x) \in \overline{f}, (x, y) \in g\}} = \{(x, x) | (x, x) \in \overline{f}, (x, x) \in g\} = \overline{f}\overline{g},$$

$$[\mathbf{R.4}] \quad f\overline{g} = \{(x, y) | (x, y) \in f, (y, y) \in \overline{g}\} = \{(x, y) | (x, y) \in f, \exists z. (y, z) \in g\} \\ = \{(x, y) | (x, y) \in f, \exists z. (x, z) \in fg\} = \{(x, y) | (x, y) \in f, (x, x) \in \overline{fg}\} = \overline{fg}f.$$

### 2.2.1 Enrichment

We may use the restriction to define a partial order on the hom-sets of a restriction category. Intuitively, we would think of a map  $f$  being less than a map  $g$  if  $f$  is defined on fewer elements than  $g$  and they agree where they are defined. This Sub-Section will bring precision to the above intuition.

**Definition 2.2.9.** In a restriction category, for any two parallel maps  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$ , define  $f \leq g$  iff  $\overline{f}g = f$ .

**Lemma 2.2.10.** For any restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , it is enriched in partial orders under the ordering  $\leq$  from Definition 2.2.9 and the following hold:

$$(i) \quad f \leq g \implies \overline{f} \leq \overline{g}; \quad (v) \quad f \leq g \text{ and } \overline{f} = \overline{g} \text{ implies } f = g;$$

$$(ii) \quad \overline{f}g \leq \overline{f};$$

$$(vi) \quad f \leq 1 \iff f = \overline{f};$$

$$(iii) \quad f \leq g \implies hf \leq hg;$$

$$(iv) \quad f \leq g \implies fh \leq gh;$$

$$(vii) \quad \overline{g}f = f \text{ implies } \overline{f} \leq \overline{g}.$$



*Proof.* First, we show the enrichment by showing  $\leq$  is a partial order on  $\mathbb{X}(A, B)$ . With  $f, g, h : A \rightarrow B$  parallel maps in  $\mathbb{X}$ , each of the requirements for a partial order is verified below:

**Reflexivity:**  $\overline{f}f = f$  and therefore,  $f \leq f$ .

**Anti-Symmetry:** Given  $\overline{f}g = f$  and  $\overline{g}f = g$ , it follows:

$$f = \overline{f}f = \overline{\overline{f}g}f = \overline{f}\overline{g}f = \overline{g}\overline{f}f = \overline{g}f = g.$$

**Transitivity:** Given  $f \leq g$  and  $g \leq h$ ,

$$\overline{f}h = \overline{\overline{f}g}h = \overline{f}\overline{g}h = \overline{f}g = f$$

showing that  $f \leq h$ .

We now show the rest of the claims.

- (i) The premise is that  $\overline{f}g = f$ . From this,  $\overline{f}\overline{g} = \overline{\overline{f}g} = \overline{f}$ , showing  $\overline{f} \leq \overline{g}$ .
- (ii)  $\overline{h}\overline{f}hg = h\overline{f}g = hf$  and therefore  $hf \leq hg$ .
- (iii)  $\overline{f}g = f$ , this shows  $\overline{f}hgh = \overline{\overline{f}g}hgh = \overline{f}\overline{g}hgh = \overline{f}gh = fh$  and therefore  $fh \leq gh$ .
- (iv)  $g = \overline{g}g = \overline{f}g = f$ .
- (v) As  $f \leq 1$  means precisely  $\overline{f}1 = f$ .
- (vi) Assuming  $\overline{g}f = f$ , we need to show  $\overline{f}\overline{g} = \overline{f}$ . Using **[R.2]** and then **[R.3]** we have  $\overline{f}\overline{g} = \overline{g}\overline{f} = \overline{\overline{g}f} = \overline{f}$ . Hence,  $\overline{f} \leq \overline{g}$ .

□

Lemma 2.2.10 shows that restriction categories are enriched in partial orders.

In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , we will use the notation  $\mathcal{O}(A)$  for the restriction idempotents of  $A \in \text{Ob } \mathbb{X}$ .  $\mathcal{O}(A) = \{x : A \rightarrow A | x = \overline{x}\}$ . The notation  $\mathcal{O}(A)$  was chosen to be suggestive of open sets.

**Lemma 2.2.11.** *In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ ,  $\mathcal{O}(A)$  is a meet semi-lattice.*

*Proof.* The top of the meet semi-lattice is  $1_A$ , under the ordering from Definition 2.2.9. The join of any two idempotents is given by their composition.  $\square$

### 2.2.2 Meets

**Definition 2.2.12.** A restriction category has *meets* if there is an operation  $\cap$  on parallel maps:

$$\frac{A \overset{f}{\rightrightarrows} B}{A \xrightarrow{f \cap g} B}$$

such that  $f \cap g \leq f, f \cap g \leq g, f \cap f = f, h(f \cap g) = hf \cap hg$ .

Meets were introduced in [12]. The following are basic results on meets:

**Lemma 2.2.13.** *In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  with meets, where  $f, g, h$  are maps in  $\mathbb{X}$ , the following are true:*

- (i)  $f \leq g$  and  $f \leq h \iff f \leq g \cap h$ ;
- (ii)  $f \cap g = g \cap f$ ;
- (iii)  $\overline{f \cap 1} = f \cap 1$ ;
- (iv)  $(f \cap g) \cap h = f \cap (g \cap h)$ ;
- (v)  $r(f \cap g) = rf \cap g$  where  $r = \bar{r}$  is a restriction idempotent;
- (vi)  $(f \cap g)r = fr \cap g$  where  $r = \bar{r}$  is a restriction idempotent;
- (vii)  $\overline{f \cap g} \leq \bar{f}$  (and therefore  $\overline{f \cap g} \leq \bar{g}$ );
- (viii)  $(f \cap 1)f = f \cap 1$ ;
- (ix)  $e(e \cap 1) = e$  where  $e$  is idempotent.

*Proof.*

(i)  $f \leq g$  and  $f \leq h$  means precisely  $f = \bar{f}g$  and  $f = \bar{f}h$ . Therefore,

$$\bar{f}(g \cap h) = \bar{f}g \cap \bar{f}h = f \cap f = f$$

and so  $f \leq g \cap h$ . Conversely, given  $f \leq g \cap h$ , we have  $f = \bar{f}(g \cap h) = \bar{f}g \cap \bar{f}h \leq \bar{f}g$ .

But  $f \leq \bar{f}g$  means  $f = \bar{f}\bar{f}g = \bar{f}g$  and therefore  $f \leq g$ . Similarly,  $f \leq h$ .

(ii) From (i), as by definition,  $f \cap g \leq g$  and  $f \cap g \leq f$ .

(iii)  $f \cap 1 = \overline{f \cap 1}(f \cap 1) = (\overline{f \cap 1}f) \cap (\overline{f \cap 1}1) \leq \overline{f \cap 1}1$  from which the result follows.

(iv) By definition and transitivity,  $(f \cap g) \cap h \leq f, g, h$  therefore by (i)  $(f \cap g) \cap h \leq f \cap (g \cap h)$ .

Similarly,  $f \cap (g \cap h) \leq (f \cap g) \cap h$  giving the equality.

(v) Given  $rf \cap g \leq rf$ , calculate:

$$rf \cap g = \overline{rf \cap g}rf = \overline{r(rf \cap g)}f = \overline{rrf \cap rgf} = \overline{r(f \cap g)}f = r\overline{f \cap g}f = r(f \cap g).$$

(vi) Using the previous point with the restriction idempotent  $\bar{f}r$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} fr \cap g &= \bar{f}r \cap g = \bar{f}rf \cap g = \bar{f}r(f \cap g) = \bar{f}r\overline{f \cap g}f \\ &= \overline{f \cap g}\bar{f}rf = \overline{f \cap g}f\bar{r} = (f \cap g)r. \end{aligned}$$

(vii) For the first claim,

$$\overline{f \cap g}\bar{f} = \overline{\bar{f}(f \cap g)} = \overline{(\bar{f}f) \cap g} = \overline{f \cap g}.$$

The second claim then follows by (ii).

(viii) Given  $f \cap 1 \leq f$ :

$$f \cap 1 \leq f \iff \overline{f \cap 1}f = f \cap 1 \iff (f \cap 1)f = f \cap 1$$

where the last step is by item (iii) of this lemma.

(ix) As  $e$  is idempotent,  $e(e \cap 1) = (ee \cap e) = e$ .

□

**Example 2.2.14** (Meets in PINJ). The restriction category PINJ has meets given by the intersection of the sets defining the maps. First, we note that the hom-set ordering for PINJ is given by set inclusion. Denoting intersection by  $\mathfrak{m}$ , we immediately have

$$f \mathfrak{m} g \subseteq f$$

$$f \mathfrak{m} g \subseteq g$$

$$f \mathfrak{m} f = f$$

by the properties of sets and intersections. For the final requirement,

$$\begin{aligned} h(f \mathfrak{m} g) &= \{(x, z) | \exists y. (x, y) \in h, (y, z) \in f \mathfrak{m} g\} \\ &= \{(x, z) | \exists y. (x, y) \in h, (y, z) \in f, (y, z) \in g\} \\ &= \{(x, z) | (x, z) \in hf, (x, z) \in hg\} = hf \mathfrak{m} hg. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, intersection is a meet in PINJ.

### 2.2.3 Partial monics and isomorphisms

Partial isomorphisms play a central role in this thesis. Below we present some of their basic properties.

**Definition 2.2.15.** For maps  $f$  in a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ :

- $f$  is a *partial isomorphism* when there is a *partial inverse*, written  $f^{(-1)}$  with  $f f^{(-1)} = \overline{f}$  and  $f^{(-1)} f = \overline{f^{(-1)}}$ ;
- $f$  is a *partial monic* if  $hf = kf$  implies  $h\overline{f} = k\overline{f}$ ;
- $f$  is a *partial section* if there exists an  $h$  such that  $fh = \overline{f}$ ;
- $f$  is a *restriction monic* if it is a section  $s$  with a retraction  $r$  such that  $rs = \overline{rs}$ .

Note that restriction monic is a stronger notion than that of monic. Consider two objects  $A, B$  in a restriction category where we have  $m : A \rightarrow B$ ,  $r : B \rightarrow A$  with  $mr = 1_A$ . In this

case  $A$  is called a *retract* of  $B$ , which we will write as  $A \triangleleft B$ . As  $m$  and  $r$  need not be unique, we will also write  $(m, r)A \triangleleft B$  when the specific section and retraction are to be emphasized. Since  $m$  is a section, it is a monic and therefore total. The map  $rm$  is idempotent on  $B$  as  $rmrm = r1m = rm$ .  $A$  is referred to as a *splitting* of the idempotent  $rm$ . Note there is no requirement that  $rm = \overline{rm}$  when  $m$  is simply monic.

**Lemma 2.2.16.** *In a restriction category:*

- (i)  $f, g$  partial monic implies  $fg$  is partial monic;
- (ii)  $f$  a partial section implies  $f$  is partial monic;
- (iii)  $f, g$  partial sections implies  $fg$  is a partial section;
- (iv) The partial inverse of  $f$ , when it exists, is unique;
- (v) If  $f, g$  have partial inverses and  $fg$  exists, then  $fg$  has a partial inverse;
- (vi) A restriction monic  $s$  is a partial isomorphism.

*Proof.*

- (i) Suppose  $hfg = kfg$ . As  $g$  is partial monic,  $hf\bar{g} = kf\bar{g}$ . Therefore:

$$hf\bar{g}f = kf\bar{g}f \quad [\mathbf{R.4}]$$

$$hf\bar{g}\bar{f} = kf\bar{g}\bar{f} \quad f \text{ partial monic}$$

$$hf\bar{g} = kf\bar{g} \quad \text{Lemma 2.2.3, (ii).}$$

- (ii) Suppose  $gf = kf$ . Then,  $g\bar{f} = gfh = kfh = k\bar{f}$ .

(iii) We have  $fh = \overline{f}$  and  $gh' = \overline{g}$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
fgh'h &= f\overline{g}h && g \text{ partial section} \\
&= \overline{f}gfh && [\mathbf{R.4}] \\
&= \overline{f}g\overline{f} && f \text{ partial section} \\
&= \overline{f}\overline{f}g && [\mathbf{R.2}] \\
&= \overline{\overline{f}fg} && [\mathbf{R.3}] \\
&= \overline{fg} && [\mathbf{R.1}].
\end{aligned}$$

(iv) Suppose both  $f^{(-1)}$  and  $f^\diamond$  are partial inverses of  $f$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
f^{(-1)} &= \overline{f^{(-1)}}f^{(-1)} = f^{(-1)}ff^{(-1)} = f^{(-1)}\overline{f} = f^{(-1)}ff^\diamond = f^{(-1)}f\overline{f}f^\diamond \\
&= \overline{f^{(-1)}\overline{f}f^\diamond} = \overline{f^\diamond\overline{f^{(-1)}}f^\diamond} = f^\diamond f\overline{f^{(-1)}}f^\diamond = f^\diamond ff^{(-1)}f^\diamond = f^\diamond ff^\diamond = f^\diamond.
\end{aligned}$$

(v) For  $f : A \rightarrow B$ ,  $g : B \rightarrow C$  with partial inverses  $f^{(-1)}$  and  $g^{(-1)}$  respectively, the partial inverse of  $fg$  is  $g^{(-1)}f^{(-1)}$ . Calculating  $fgg^{(-1)}f^{(-1)}$  using all the restriction identities:

$$fgg^{(-1)}f^{(-1)} = f\overline{g}f^{(-1)} = \overline{f}gf^{(-1)} = \overline{f}g\overline{f} = \overline{f}\overline{f}g = \overline{\overline{f}fg} = \overline{fg}.$$

The calculation of  $g^{(-1)}f^{(-1)}fg = \overline{g^{(-1)}f^{(-1)}}$  is similar.

(vi) The partial inverse of  $s$  is  $\overline{rs}r$ . First, note that  $\overline{\overline{rs}r} = \overline{rs}\overline{r} = \overline{r}\overline{rs} = \overline{\overline{r}rs} = \overline{rs}$ .

Then, it follows that  $(\overline{rs}r)s = rs = \overline{rs} = \overline{\overline{rs}r}$  and  $s(\overline{rs}r) = sr\overline{s} = \overline{s}$ .

□

**Definition 2.2.17.** A restriction category in which every map is a partial isomorphism is called an *inverse category*.

**Lemma 2.2.18.** *In an inverse category, all idempotents are restriction idempotents.*

*Proof.* Given an idempotent  $e$ ,

$$\bar{e} = ee^{(-1)} = eee^{(-1)} = e\bar{e} = \bar{e}e = \bar{e}e = e.$$

□

**Example 2.2.19.** The category  $\text{PINJ}$  is an inverse category. For any map  $f$ ,  $f^{(-1)} = \{(y, x) | (x, y) \in f\}$ . Note that  $f^{(-1)}$  is a map in  $\text{PINJ}$  due to the two dual conditions on maps as given in Example 2.1.21.

On the other hand,  $\text{PAR}$  is not an inverse category. For example, let  $A = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $B = \{1\}$  and  $f = \{(1, 1), (2, 1)\}$  in  $\text{PAR}$ . The restriction of  $f$  is  $\bar{f} = \{(1, 1), (2, 2)\} = 1_A$ . There is no partial function  $g : B \rightarrow A$  such that  $fg = 1_A$ .

#### 2.2.4 Range categories

Corresponding to Definition 2.2.1 for restriction, which axiomatizes the concept of a domain of definition, we now introduce range categories [11, 12, 24] which algebraically axiomatize the concept of the range for a function.

**Definition 2.2.20.** A restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  is a *range category* when it has an operator on all maps

$$\frac{f : A \rightarrow B}{\hat{f} : B \rightarrow B}$$

where the operator satisfies the following:

$$\begin{array}{ll} [\text{RR.1}] \quad \overline{\hat{f}} = \hat{f} & [\text{RR.2}] \quad f\hat{f} = f \\ [\text{RR.3}] \quad \widehat{f\bar{g}} = \hat{f}\bar{g} & [\text{RR.4}] \quad \widehat{\hat{f}g} = \widehat{\hat{f}}\widehat{g} \end{array}$$

whenever the compositions are defined.

**Lemma 2.2.21.** *In a range category  $\mathbb{X}$ , the following hold:*

$$\begin{array}{ll}
(i) \quad \hat{g}\hat{f} = \hat{f}\hat{g}; & (v) \quad \hat{f}\hat{f} = \hat{f}; \\
(ii) \quad \overline{f}\hat{g} = \hat{g}\overline{f}; & (vi) \quad \hat{\hat{f}} = \hat{f}; \\
(iii) \quad \widehat{f\hat{g}} = \hat{f}\hat{g}; & (vii) \quad \widehat{\hat{f}} = \overline{f}; \\
(iv) \quad \hat{f} = 1 \text{ when } f \text{ is epic, hence} & (viii) \quad \widehat{\hat{g}\hat{f}\hat{g}} = \widehat{\hat{f}\hat{g}}; \\
\hat{1} = 1; & (ix) \quad \widehat{\hat{f}\hat{g}} = \hat{f}\hat{g}.
\end{array}$$

*Proof.* See, e.g., [24]. □

**Lemma 2.2.22.** *In a range category:*

$$\begin{array}{ll}
(i) \quad \widehat{hf} \leq \hat{f}; & (ii) \quad f' \leq f \text{ implies } \hat{f}' \leq \hat{f}.
\end{array}$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{array}{ll}
(i) \quad \text{Noting that } \widehat{\widehat{hf}}\hat{f} = \widehat{hf}\hat{f} = \widehat{hf\hat{f}} = \widehat{hf}, \text{ we see } \widehat{hf} \leq \hat{f}. \\
(ii) \quad \text{Calculating } \widehat{\hat{f}'}\hat{f} = \hat{f}'\hat{f} = \widehat{\widehat{f'}}\hat{f} = \widehat{\widehat{f'}}\hat{f} = \widehat{\widehat{f'}}\hat{f} = \widehat{\widehat{f'}}\hat{f} = \hat{f}', \text{ we see } \hat{f}' \leq \hat{f}.
\end{array}$$

□

**Remark 2.2.23.** Note that unlike restrictions, a range is a *property* of a restriction category.

To see this, assume we have two ranges  $\widehat{(-)}$  and  $\widetilde{(-)}$ . Then,

$$\hat{f} = \widehat{f\hat{f}} = \hat{f}\hat{f} = \widetilde{f\hat{f}} = \widetilde{f}\hat{f} = \widetilde{f}.$$

**Lemma 2.2.24.** *An inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  is a range category, where  $\hat{f} = f^{(-1)}f = \overline{f^{(-1)}}$ .*

*Proof.*

$$[\mathbf{RR.1}] \quad \overline{\hat{f}} = \overline{\overline{f^{(-1)}}} = \overline{f^{(-1)}} = \hat{f};$$

$$[\mathbf{RR.2}] \quad f\hat{f} = f\overline{f^{(-1)}} = f\overline{f^{(-1)}}f = \overline{f}f = f;$$

$$[\mathbf{RR.3}] \quad \widehat{f\hat{g}} = \overline{(f\hat{g})^{(-1)}} = \overline{\overline{g^{(-1)}}f^{(-1)}} = \overline{\overline{g}f^{(-1)}} = \overline{\overline{g}f^{(-1)}} = \overline{f^{(-1)}}\overline{g} = \hat{f}\hat{g};$$



$$[\mathbf{RR.4}] \quad \widehat{fg} = \overline{(f^{(-1)}g)^{(-1)}} = \overline{g^{(-1)}f^{(-1)^{(-1)}}} = \overline{g^{(-1)}\overline{f^{(-1)}}} = \overline{g^{(-1)}f^{(-1)}} = \overline{(fg)^{(-1)}} = \widehat{fg}$$

□

**Example 2.2.25.** In PINJ,  $\hat{f} = \{(y, y) | \exists x. (x, y) \in f\}$ .

### 2.2.5 Split restriction categories

The Karoubi envelope of a restriction category,  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$  as defined in Definition 2.1.5 is a restriction category.

Note that for  $f : (A, d) \rightarrow (B, e)$ , by definition, in  $\mathbb{X}$  we have  $f = dfe$ , giving

$$df = d(dfe) = ddfe = dfe = f \quad \text{and} \quad fe = (dfe)e = dfee = dfe = f.$$

When  $\mathbb{X}$  is a restriction category, there is an immediate candidate for a restriction in  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$ . If  $f \in K_E(\mathbb{X})$  is  $e_1 f e_2$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ , then define  $\bar{f}$  as given by  $e_1 \bar{f}$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ . Note that for  $f : (A, d) \rightarrow (B, e)$ , in  $\mathbb{X}$  we have:

$$d\bar{f} = \bar{d}fd = \bar{f}d.$$

**Proposition 2.2.26.** *If  $\mathbb{X}$  is a restriction category and  $E$  is a set of idempotents, then the restriction as defined above makes  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$  a restriction category.*

*Proof.* The restriction takes  $f : (A, e_1) \rightarrow (B, e_2)$  to an endomorphism of  $(A, e_1)$ . The restriction is in  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$  as

$$e_1(e_1 \bar{f})e_1 = e_1 \bar{f}e_1 = \overline{e_1 f}e_1e_1 = \overline{e_1 f}e_1 = e_1 \bar{f}.$$

Checking the 4 restriction axioms:

$$[\mathbf{R.1}] \quad \llbracket \bar{f}f \rrbracket = e_1 \bar{f}f = e_1 f = \llbracket f \rrbracket.$$

$$[\mathbf{R.2}] \quad \llbracket \bar{g}\bar{f} \rrbracket = e_1 \bar{g}e_1 \bar{f} = e_1 e_1 \bar{g}\bar{f} = e_1 e_1 \bar{f}\bar{g} = e_1 \bar{f}e_1 \bar{g} = \llbracket \bar{f}\bar{g} \rrbracket.$$

$$[\mathbf{R.3}] \quad \llbracket \bar{f}g \rrbracket \equiv e_1 \overline{e_1 \bar{f}g} = \overline{e_1 e_1 \bar{f}g}e_1 = \overline{e_1 \bar{f}g}e_1 = e_1 \overline{\bar{f}g} = e_1 \bar{f}\bar{g} = e_1 e_1 \bar{f}\bar{g} = e_1 \bar{f}e_1 \bar{g} = \llbracket \bar{f}\bar{g} \rrbracket.$$

$$[\mathbf{R.4}] \quad \llbracket f\bar{g} \rrbracket = e_1 f e_2 \bar{g} = \overline{e_1 f e_2 g}e_1 f e_2 = \overline{e_1 e_1 f e_2 g}e_1 f e_2 \\ = e_1 \overline{e_1 f e_2 g}e_1 f e_2 = e_1 \bar{f}g e_1 f e_2 = \llbracket \bar{f}g f \rrbracket.$$

□

Given this, provided all identity maps are in  $E$ ,  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$  is a restriction category with  $\mathbb{X}$  as a full sub-restriction category, via the embedding defined by taking an object  $A$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  to the object  $(A, 1)$  in  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$ . Furthermore, the property of being an inverse category is preserved by splitting.

**Lemma 2.2.27.** *When  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category,  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse category.*

*Proof.* The inverse of  $f : (A, e_1) \rightarrow (B, e_2)$  in  $K_E(\mathbb{X})$  is  $e_2 f^{(-1)} e_1$  as

$$\llbracket f f^{(-1)} \rrbracket = e_1 f e_2 e_2 f^{(-1)} e_1 = e_1 e_1 f e_2 f^{(-1)} e_1 = e_1 f f^{(-1)} e_1 = e_1 e_1 \bar{f} e_1 = e_1 \bar{f} = \llbracket \bar{f} \rrbracket$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \llbracket f^{(-1)} f \rrbracket &= e_2 f^{(-1)} e_1 e_1 f e_2 = e_2 f^{(-1)} e_1 f e_2 e_2 = e_2 f^{(-1)} f e_2 \\ &= e_2 e_2 \overline{f^{(-1)}} e_2 = e_2 \overline{f^{(-1)}} = \llbracket \overline{f^{(-1)}} \rrbracket. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 2.2.28.** *In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , with meets, let  $R$  be the set of restriction idempotents. Then,  $K(\mathbb{X}) \cong K_R(\mathbb{X})$ . That is, splitting over all the idempotents is equivalent to splitting over just the restriction idempotents. Furthermore,  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  has meets.*

*Proof.* The proof first shows the equivalence of the two categories, then addresses the claim that  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  has meets.

For equivalence, we require two functors,

$$U : K_R(\mathbb{X}) \rightarrow K(\mathbb{X}) \text{ and } V : K(\mathbb{X}) \rightarrow K_R(\mathbb{X}),$$

with:

$$UV \cong I_{K_R(\mathbb{X})} \tag{2.3}$$

$$VU \cong I_{K(\mathbb{X})}. \tag{2.4}$$

$U$  is the standard inclusion functor.  $V$  will take the object  $(A, e)$  to  $(A, e \cap 1)$  and the map  $f : (A, e_1) \rightarrow (B, e_2)$  to  $(e_1 \cap 1)f$ .

$V$  is a functor as:

**Well Defined:** If  $f : (A, e_1) \rightarrow (B, e_2)$ , then  $(e_1 \cap 1)f$  is a map in  $\mathbb{X}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  and

$$(e_1 \cap 1)(e_1 \cap 1)f(e_2 \cap 1) = (e_1 \cap 1)(fe_2 \cap f) = (e_1 \cap 1)(f \cap f) = (e_1 \cap 1)f,$$

therefore,  $V(f) : V((A, e_1)) \rightarrow V((B, e_2))$ .

**Identities:**  $V(e) = (e \cap 1)e = e \cap 1$  by lemma 2.2.13.

**Composition:**  $V(f)V(g) = (e_1 \cap 1)f(e_2 \cap 1)g = (e_1 \cap 1)fe_2(e_2 \cap 1)g = (e_1 \cap 1)f(e_2 \cap e_2)g = (e_1 \cap 1)fe_2g = (e_1 \cap 1)fg = V(fg)$ .

Recalling from Lemma 2.2.13,  $(e \cap 1)$  is a restriction idempotent. Using this fact, the commutativity of restriction idempotents and the general idempotent identities from 2.2.13, the composite functor  $UV$  is the identity on  $K_r(\mathbb{X})$  as when  $e$  is a restriction idempotent,  $e = e(e \cap 1) = (e \cap 1)e = (e \cap 1)$ .

For the other direction, note that for a particular idempotent  $e : A \rightarrow A$ , this gives the maps  $e : (A, e) \rightarrow (A, e \cap 1)$  and  $e \cap 1 : (A, e \cap 1) \rightarrow (A, e)$ , again by 2.2.13. These maps give the natural isomorphism between  $I$  and  $VU$  as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (A, e) & \xrightarrow{e} & (A, e \cap 1) \\ & \searrow e & \downarrow e \cap 1 \\ & & (A, e) \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} (A, e \cap 1) & \xrightarrow{e \cap 1} & (A, e) \\ & \searrow e \cap 1 & \downarrow e \\ & & (A, e \cap 1) \end{array}$$

both commute. Therefore,  $UV = I$  and  $VU \cong I$ , giving an equivalence of the categories.

For the rest of this proof, functions in bold type, e.g.,  $\mathbf{f}$ , are in  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$ . Functions in normal slanted type, e.g.,  $f$  are in  $\mathbb{X}$ .

To show that  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  has meets, designate the meet in  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  as  $\cap_K$  and define  $\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}$  as the map given by the  $\mathbb{X}$  map  $f \cap g$ , where  $\mathbf{f}, \mathbf{g} : (A, d) \rightarrow (B, e)$  in  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  and  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ . This is a map in  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  as  $d(f \cap g)e = (df \cap dg)e = (f \cap g)e = (fe \cap g) = f \cap g$  where the penultimate equality is by 2.2.13. By definition  $\overline{\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}}$  is  $\overline{df \cap dg}$ .

It is necessary to show  $\cap_K$  satisfies the four meet properties.

- $\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g} \leq \mathbf{f}$ : We need to show  $\overline{\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}} \mathbf{f} = \mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}$ . Calculating now in  $\mathbb{X}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{df \cap gf} &= \overline{d(f \cap g)}df \\ &= \overline{df \cap dg}df \\ &= \overline{f \cap g}f \\ &= f \cap g \end{aligned}$$

which is the definition of  $\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}$ .

- $\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g} \leq \mathbf{g}$ : Similarly and once again calculating in  $\mathbb{X}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{df \cap gg} &= \overline{d(f \cap g)}dg \\ &= \overline{df \cap dg}dg \\ &= \overline{f \cap g}g \\ &= f \cap g \end{aligned}$$

which is the definition of  $\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}$ .

- $\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{f} = \mathbf{f}$ : From the definition, this is  $f \cap f = f$  which is just  $\mathbf{f}$ .
- $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{f} \cap_K \mathbf{g}) = \mathbf{hf} \cap_K \mathbf{hg}$ : From the definition, this is given in  $\mathbb{X}$  by  $h(f \cap g) = hf \cap hg$  which in  $K_R(\mathbb{X})$  is  $\mathbf{hf} \cap_K \mathbf{hg}$ .

□

## 2.2.6 Partial Map Categories

In [14], it is shown that split restriction categories are equivalent to *partial map categories*.

The main definitions and results related to partial map categories are given below.

**Definition 2.2.29.** A collection  $\mathcal{M}$  of monics is a *stable system of monics* when:

- (i) it includes all isomorphisms;

- (ii) it is closed under composition;
- (iii) it is pullback stable.

*Stable* in this definition means that if  $m : A \rightarrow B$  is in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then for arbitrary  $b$  with codomain  $B$ , the pullback

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A' & \xrightarrow{a} & A \\ m' \downarrow & & \downarrow m \\ B' & \xrightarrow{b} & B \end{array}$$

exists and  $m' \in \mathcal{M}$ . A category that has a stable system of monics is referred to as an  $\mathcal{M}$ -category.

**Lemma 2.2.30.** *If  $nm \in \mathcal{M}$ , a stable system of monics, and  $m$  is monic, then  $n \in \mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The commutative square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{1} & A \\ n \downarrow & & \downarrow nm \\ A' & \xrightarrow{m} & B \end{array}$$

is a pullback. □

Given a category  $\mathbb{B}$  and a stable system of monics, the *partial map category*,  $\text{Par}(\mathbb{B}, \mathcal{M})$  is:

**Objects:**  $A \in \mathbb{B}$ ;

**Equivalence Classes of Maps:**  $(m, f) : A \rightarrow B$  with  $m : A' \rightarrow A$  is in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $f : A' \rightarrow B$

is a map in  $\mathbb{B}$ . i.e.,  $\begin{array}{ccc} & A' & \\ m \swarrow & & \searrow f \\ A & & B \end{array} \quad ;$

**Identity:**  $1_A, 1_A : A \rightarrow A$ ;

**Composition:** via a pullback,  $(m, f)(m', g) = (m''m, f'g)$  where

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & A'' & & \\ & m'' \swarrow & & \searrow f' & \\ & A' & \text{(pb)} & B' & \\ m \swarrow & & & & \searrow g \\ A & & f \rightarrow B & \xleftarrow{m'} & C \end{array}$$

;

**Restriction:**  $\overline{(m, f)} = (m, m)$ .

For the maps,  $(m, f) \sim (m', f')$  when there is an isomorphism  $\gamma : A'' \rightarrow A'$  such that  $\gamma m' = m$  and  $\gamma f' = f$ .

In [15], it is shown that:

**Theorem 2.2.31** (Cockett-Lack). *Every restriction category is a full sub-category of a partial map category.*

### 2.2.7 Restriction products and Cartesian restriction categories

Restriction categories have analogues of products and terminal objects.

**Definition 2.2.32.** In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , a *restriction product* of two objects  $X, Y$  is an object  $X \times Y$  equipped with *total* projections  $\pi_0 : X \times Y \rightarrow X, \pi_1 : X \times Y \rightarrow Y$  where:

$\forall f : Z \rightarrow X, g : Z \rightarrow Y, \quad \exists$  a unique  $\langle f, g \rangle : Z \rightarrow X \times Y$  such that

- $\langle f, g \rangle \pi_0 \leq f$ ,
- $\langle f, g \rangle \pi_1 \leq g$  and
- $\overline{\langle f, g \rangle} = \bar{f} \bar{g} (= \bar{g} \bar{f})$ .

**Definition 2.2.33.** In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  a *restriction terminal object* is an object  $\top$  such that for all objects  $X$ , there is a unique total map  $!_X : X \rightarrow \top$  and the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & X & \xrightarrow{!_X} & \top \\ \downarrow f & & & \nearrow !_Y & \\ Y & & & & \end{array}$$

commutes. That is,  $f !_Y = \bar{f} !_X$ . Note this implies that a restriction terminal object is unique up to a unique isomorphism.

**Definition 2.2.34.** A restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  is *Cartesian* if it has all restriction products and a restriction terminal object.

### 2.2.8 Discrete Cartesian Restriction Categories

**Definition 2.2.35.** An object  $A$  in a Cartesian restriction category is *discrete* when the diagonal map

$$\Delta : A \rightarrow A \times A$$

is a partial isomorphism. A Cartesian restriction category where all objects are discrete is called a *discrete* Cartesian restriction category.

**Theorem 2.2.36.** A Cartesian restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  is discrete if and only if it has meets.

*Proof.* If  $\mathbb{X}$  has meets, then

$$\Delta(\pi_0 \cap \pi_1) = \Delta\pi_0 \cap \Delta\pi_1 = 1 \cap 1 = 1.$$

As  $\langle \pi_0, \pi_1 \rangle$  is identity,

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\pi_0 \cap \pi_1} &= \overline{\pi_0 \cap \pi_1} \langle \pi_0, \pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{\pi_0 \cap \pi_1} \pi_0, \overline{\pi_0 \cap \pi_1} \pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \pi_0 \cap \pi_1, \pi_0 \cap \pi_1 \rangle \\ &= (\pi_0 \cap \pi_1) \Delta \end{aligned}$$

and therefore,  $\pi_0 \cap \pi_1$  is  $\Delta^{(-1)}$ .

To show the other direction, we set  $f \cap g = \langle f, g \rangle \Delta^{(-1)}$ . By the definition of the restriction product:

$$f \cap g = \langle f, g \rangle \Delta^{(-1)} = \langle f, g \rangle \Delta^{(-1)} \Delta \pi_0 = \langle f, g \rangle \overline{\Delta^{(-1)}} \pi_0 \leq \langle f, g \rangle \pi_0 \leq f.$$

Then, substituting  $\pi_1$  for  $\pi_0$  above, this gives us  $f \cap g \leq g$ .

For the left distributive law,

$$h(f \cap g) = h\langle f, g \rangle \Delta^{(-1)} = \langle hf, hg \rangle \Delta^{(-1)} = hf \cap hg.$$

The intersection of a map with itself is

$$f \cap f = \langle f, f \rangle \Delta^{(-1)} = (f \Delta) \Delta^{(-1)} = f \overline{\Delta} = f$$

as  $\Delta$  is total. This shows that  $\cap$  as defined above is a meet for the Cartesian restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ . □

**Definition 2.2.37.** In a Cartesian restriction category, a map  $A \xrightarrow{f} B$  is called *graphic* when the maps

$$A \xrightarrow{\langle f, 1 \rangle} B \times A \quad \text{and} \quad A \xrightarrow{\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle} A \times A$$

have partial inverses. A Cartesian restriction category is *graphic* when all of its maps are graphic.

**Lemma 2.2.38.** *In a Cartesian restriction category:*

- (i) *Graphic maps are closed under composition;*
- (ii) *Graphic maps are closed under the restriction;*
- (iii) *An object is discrete if and only if its identity map is graphic.*

*Proof.*

- (i) To show closure, it is necessary to show that  $\langle fg, 1 \rangle$  has a partial inverse. By Lemma 2.2.16, the uniqueness of the partial inverse gives

$$(\langle f, 1 \rangle; \langle g, 1 \rangle \times 1)^{(-1)} = \langle g, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \times 1; \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)}.$$

By the definition of the restriction product, we have  $\overline{\langle fg, 1 \rangle} = \overline{fg}$ . Additionally, a straightforward calculation shows that  $\overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle; \langle g, 1 \rangle \times 1} = \overline{\langle f \langle g, 1 \rangle, 1 \rangle} =$



$\overline{f; \langle g, 1 \rangle} = \overline{\langle f; g, f \rangle} = \overline{fg} \overline{f} = \overline{fg}$  where the last equality is by **[R.2]**, **[R.3]** and finally **[R.1]**.

Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{\langle f, 1 \rangle} & B \times A & \xrightarrow{\langle g, 1 \rangle \times 1} & C \times B \times A \\
 & \searrow \langle fg, 1 \rangle & & & \uparrow 1 \times \langle f, 1 \rangle \\
 & & & & C \times A.
 \end{array}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \langle fg, 1 \rangle (1 \times \langle f, 1 \rangle) (\langle g, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \times 1) \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \\
 &= \langle f, 1 \rangle (\langle g, 1 \rangle \times 1) (\langle g, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \times 1) \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \\
 &= \langle f, 1 \rangle \overline{(g \times 1)} \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \\
 &= \overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle (g \times 1)} \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \\
 &= \overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle (g \times 1)} \overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle} \\
 &= \overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle} \overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle (g \times 1)} \\
 &= \overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle (g \times 1)} \\
 &= \overline{\langle fg, 1 \rangle} (= \overline{fg})
 \end{aligned}$$

showing that  $1 \times \langle f, 1 \rangle (\langle g, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \times 1) \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)}$  is a right inverse for  $\langle fg, 1 \rangle$ .

For the other direction, note that in general  $(hk)^{(-1)} = k^{(-1)}h^{(-1)}$  and that we have  $\langle fg, 1 \rangle = \langle f, 1 \rangle (\langle g, 1 \rangle \times 1) (1 \times \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)})$ , thus  $(1 \times \langle f, 1 \rangle) (\langle g, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} \times 1) \langle f, 1 \rangle^{(-1)}$  will also be a left inverse and  $\langle fg, 1 \rangle$  is a restriction isomorphism.

- (ii) This follows from the definition of graphic and that  $\overline{\langle f, 1 \rangle} = \overline{f} = \overline{\overline{f}}$ .
- (iii) Given a discrete object  $A$ , the identity on  $A$  is graphic as  $\langle 1, 1 \rangle = \Delta$  and therefore  $\langle 1, 1 \rangle^{(-1)} = \Delta^{(-1)}$ . Conversely, if  $\langle 1, 1 \rangle = \Delta$  has an inverse,  $A$  is discrete by definition.

□

**Lemma 2.2.39.** *A discrete restriction category is precisely a graphic Cartesian restriction category.*

*Proof.* The requirement is that  $\langle f, 1 \rangle$  (and  $\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle$ ) each have partial inverses. For  $\langle f, 1 \rangle$ , the inverse is  $\overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1$ .

To show this, calculate the two compositions. First,

$$\langle f, 1 \rangle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 = \overline{\langle f, f \rangle \Delta^{(-1)}}\langle f, 1 \rangle \pi_1 = \overline{f\Delta\Delta^{(-1)}}\langle f, 1 \rangle \pi_1 = \bar{f}\langle f, 1 \rangle \pi_1 = \bar{f}.$$

The other direction is:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \langle f, 1 \rangle &= \langle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 f, \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}(1 \times f)\pi_1, \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1, \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_0, \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}(1 \times f)\pi_0, \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_0, \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}}\langle \pi_0, \pi_1 \rangle \\ &= \overline{(1 \times f)\Delta^{(-1)}} \end{aligned}$$

The above follows in a discrete restriction category, as we have

$$\overline{\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 = \Delta^{(-1)}\Delta\pi_1 = \Delta^{(-1)} = \Delta^{(-1)}\Delta\pi_0 = \overline{\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_0.$$

For  $\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle$ , the inverse is  $\overline{(1 \times \bar{f})\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1$ . Similarly to above,

$$\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle \overline{(1 \times \bar{f})\Delta^{(-1)}}\pi_1 = \overline{\langle \bar{f}, \bar{f} \rangle \Delta^{(-1)}}\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle \pi_1 = \overline{\bar{f}\Delta\Delta^{(-1)}}\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle \pi_1 = \bar{\bar{f}}\langle \bar{f}, 1 \rangle \pi_1 = \bar{\bar{f}}.$$

The other direction follows the same pattern as for  $\langle f, 1 \rangle$ .

□

## 2.3 Dagger categories

Dagger categories generalize the concepts of Hilbert spaces that are required to model quantum computation. These were introduced in [3] as *strongly compact closed categories*, an additional structure only on compact closed categories.

Before introducing dagger categories, we define symmetric monoidal categories and compact closed categories.

### 2.3.1 Symmetric Monoidal Categories

**Definition 2.3.1.** A *symmetric monoidal category* [5, 34]  $\mathbb{D}$  is a category equipped with a monoid  $\otimes$  (a bi-functor  $\otimes : \mathbb{D} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ ) together with four families of natural isomorphisms:  $a_{A,B,C} : A \otimes (B \otimes C) \rightarrow (A \otimes B) \otimes C$ ,  $u_A^r : A \otimes I \rightarrow A$ ,  $u_A^l : I \otimes A \rightarrow A$  and  $c_{A,B} : A \otimes B \rightarrow B \otimes A$ , which satisfy coherence diagrams and equations shown in Figures 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5. The isomorphisms are referred to as the *structure isomorphisms* for the symmetric monoidal category.  $I$  is the unit of the monoid. A symmetric monoidal category where each of  $a_{A,B,C}$ ,  $u_A^r$ ,  $u_A^l$  and  $c_{A,B}$  are identity maps is called a *strict symmetric monoidal category*.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A \otimes (B \otimes (C \otimes D)) & \xrightarrow{a_{A,B,(C \otimes D)}} & (A \otimes B) \otimes (C \otimes D) & \xrightarrow{a_{(A \otimes B),C,D}} & ((A \otimes B) \otimes C) \otimes D \\
 \downarrow 1 \otimes a_{B,C,D} & & & & \downarrow a_{A,B,C} \otimes 1 \\
 A \otimes ((B \otimes C) \otimes D) & \xrightarrow{a_{A,(B \otimes C),D}} & & & (A \otimes (B \otimes C)) \otimes D
 \end{array}$$

**Figure 2.1:** Pentagon diagram for associativity in an SMC.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \otimes (I \otimes B) & \xrightarrow{a_{A,I,B}} & (A \otimes I) \otimes B \\
 \searrow 1 \otimes u_B^l & & \swarrow u_A^r \otimes 1 \\
 & A \otimes B & \\
 \text{and } u_I^r = u_I^l : I \otimes I \rightarrow I & & 
 \end{array}$$

**Figure 2.2:** Unit diagram and equation in an SMC.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A \otimes B & \xrightarrow{c_{A,B}} & B \otimes A \\
& \searrow & \downarrow c_{B,A} \\
& & A \otimes B
\end{array}$$

**Figure 2.3:** Symmetry in an SMC.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A \otimes I & \xrightarrow{c_{A,I}} & I \otimes A \\
& \searrow u_A^r & \swarrow u_A^l \\
& & A
\end{array}$$

**Figure 2.4:** Unit symmetry in an SMC.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
(A \otimes B) \otimes C & \xrightarrow{c_{(A \otimes B), C}} & C \otimes (A \otimes B) \\
\downarrow a_{A,B,C}^{-1} & & \downarrow a_{C,A,B} \\
A \otimes (B \otimes C) & & (C \otimes A) \otimes B \\
\downarrow 1 \otimes c_{B,C} & & \downarrow c_{C,A} \otimes 1 \\
A \otimes (C \otimes B) & \xrightarrow{a_{A,C,B}} & C \otimes (A \otimes B), \\
\\
A \otimes (B \otimes C) & \xrightarrow{c_{A,(B \otimes C)}} & (B \otimes C) \otimes A \\
\downarrow a_{A,B,C} & & \downarrow a_{B,C,A}^{-1} \\
(A \otimes B) \otimes C & & B \otimes (C \otimes A) \\
\downarrow c_{A,B} \otimes 1 & & \downarrow 1 \otimes c_{C,A} \\
(B \otimes A) \otimes C & \xrightarrow{a_{B,A,C}^{-1}} & B \otimes (A \otimes C)
\end{array}$$

**Figure 2.5:** Associativity symmetry in an SMC.

The essence of the coherence diagrams is that any diagram composed solely of the structure isomorphisms will commute.

**Definition 2.3.2.** A *compact closed category*  $\mathbb{D}$  is a symmetric monoidal category with tensor  $\otimes$  where each object  $A$  has a dual  $A^*$ . Additionally, there must exist families of maps  $\eta_A : I \rightarrow A^* \otimes A$  (the *unit*) and  $\epsilon_A : A \otimes A^* \rightarrow I$  (the *counit*) such that

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{u_A} & A \otimes I & \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \eta_A} & A \otimes (A^* \otimes A) \\ \parallel & & & & \downarrow a_{A, A^*, A} \\ A & \xleftarrow{u_A^{-1}} & I \otimes A & \xleftarrow{\otimes \epsilon_B \otimes 1} & (A \otimes A^*) \otimes A \end{array}$$

commutes and so does the similar one based on  $A^*$ .

Given a map  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in a compact closed category, define the map  $f^* : B^* \rightarrow A^*$  as

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B^* & \xrightarrow{u_{B^*}} & I \otimes B^* & \xrightarrow{\eta_A \otimes 1} & A^* \otimes A \otimes B^* \\ f^* \downarrow & & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes f \otimes 1 \\ A^* & \xleftarrow{u_{A^*}^{-1}} & A^* \otimes I & \xleftarrow{1 \otimes \epsilon_B} & A^* \otimes B \otimes B^*. \end{array}$$

### 2.3.2 Definitions

Although dagger categories were introduced in the context of compact closed categories, the concept of a dagger is definable independently. This was first done in [47].

**Definition 2.3.3.** A *dagger operator* on a category  $D$  is a functor  $\dagger : \mathbb{D}^{op} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ , which is involutive in the sense that it is the identity on objects. A *dagger category* is a category that has a dagger operator.

Typically, the dagger is written as a superscript on the morphism. So, if  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a map in  $\mathbb{D}$ , then  $f^\dagger : B \rightarrow A$  is a map in  $\mathbb{D}$  and is called the *adjoint* of  $f$ . A map where  $f^{-1} = f^\dagger$  is called *unitary*. A map  $f : A \rightarrow A$  with  $f = f^\dagger$  is called *self-adjoint* or *Hermitian*.

**Definition 2.3.4.** A *dagger symmetric monoidal category* is a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathbb{D}$  with a dagger operator such that:

- (i) For all maps  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : C \rightarrow D$ ,  $(f \otimes g)^\dagger = f^\dagger \otimes g^\dagger : B \otimes D \rightarrow A \otimes C$ ;
- (ii) The monoid structure isomorphisms  $a_{A,B,C} : (A \otimes B) \otimes C \rightarrow A \otimes (B \otimes C)$ ,  
 $u_A^l : I \otimes A \rightarrow A$ ,  $u_A^r : A \otimes I \rightarrow A$  and  $c_{A,B} : A \otimes B \rightarrow B \otimes A$  are unitary.

**Definition 2.3.5.** A *dagger compact closed category*  $\mathbb{D}$  is a dagger symmetric monoidal category that is compact closed where the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 I & \xrightarrow{\epsilon_A^\dagger} & A \otimes A^* \\
 & \searrow \eta_A & \downarrow c_{A,A^*} \\
 & & A^* \otimes A
 \end{array}$$

commutes for all objects  $A$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ .

**Lemma 2.3.6.** If  $\mathbb{D}$  is a dagger category with biproducts, with injections  $in_1, in_2$  and projections  $p_1, p_2$ , then the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $p_i^\dagger = in_i, i = 1, 2$ ,
- (ii)  $(f \boxplus g)^\dagger = f^\dagger \boxplus g^\dagger$  and  $\Delta^\dagger = \nabla$ ,
- (iii)  $\langle f, g \rangle^\dagger = [f^\dagger, g^\dagger]$ ,
- (iv) The map  $[p_1^\dagger, p_2^\dagger] : A^\dagger \boxplus B^\dagger \rightarrow (A \boxplus B)^\dagger$  is the identity map.

*Proof.* (i)  $\implies$  (ii) To show  $\Delta^\dagger = \nabla$ , draw the product cone for  $\Delta$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & A & & \\
 & \swarrow id & \downarrow \Delta & \searrow id & \\
 A & \xleftarrow{p_1} & A \boxplus A & \xrightarrow{p_2} & A
 \end{array}$$

and apply the dagger functor to it. As  $p_i^\dagger = in_i$ , and  $\dagger$  is identity on objects, this is now a coproduct diagram and therefore  $\Delta^\dagger = \nabla$ .

For  $(f \boxplus g)^\dagger = f^\dagger \boxplus g^\dagger$ , start with the diagram defining  $f \boxplus g$  as a product of the arrows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xleftarrow{p_1} & A \boxplus B & \xrightarrow{p_2} & A \\
 f \downarrow & & \downarrow f \boxplus g & & \downarrow g \\
 C & \xleftarrow{p_1} & C \boxplus D & \xrightarrow{p_2} & D
 \end{array}$$

Then, apply the dagger functor to this diagram. This is now the diagram defining the co-product of maps and therefore  $(f \boxplus g)^\dagger = f^\dagger \boxplus g^\dagger$ .

(ii)  $\implies$  (iii) The calculation showing this is

$$\begin{aligned}
[f^\dagger, g^\dagger] &= \nabla; (f^\dagger \boxplus g^\dagger) \\
&= \Delta^\dagger; (f^\dagger \boxplus g^\dagger) \\
&= \Delta^\dagger; (f \boxplus g)^\dagger \\
&= ((f \boxplus g); \Delta)^\dagger \\
&= \langle f, g \rangle^\dagger
\end{aligned}$$

(iii)  $\implies$  (iv) Under the assumption,

$$[p_1^\dagger, p_2^\dagger] = \langle p_1, p_2 \rangle^\dagger = id^\dagger = id.$$

(iv)  $\implies$  (i) As  $[in_1, in_2] : A^\dagger \boxplus B^\dagger \rightarrow A^\dagger \boxplus B^\dagger = id = [p_1^\dagger, p_2^\dagger]$ , we immediately have

$$p_1^\dagger = in_1 \text{ and } p_2^\dagger = in_2.$$

□

**Definition 2.3.7.** A *biproduct dagger compact closed category* is a dagger compact closed category with biproducts where the conditions of lemma 2.3.6 hold.

### 2.3.3 Examples of dagger categories

**Example 2.3.8** (FDHILB). The category of finite dimensional Hilbert spaces is the motivating example for the creation of the dagger and is, in fact, a biproduct dagger compact closed category. The biproduct is the direct sum of Hilbert spaces and the tensor for compact closure is the standard tensor of Hilbert spaces. The dual  $H^*$  of a space  $H$  is the space of all continuous linear functions from  $H$  to the base field. The dagger is defined via the adjoint as being the unique map  $f^\dagger : B \rightarrow A$  such that  $\langle fa|b \rangle = \langle a|f^\dagger b \rangle$  for all  $a \in A, b \in B$ .

**Example 2.3.9** (REL). The category REL of sets and relations has the tensor  $S \otimes T = S \times T$ , the Cartesian product and the biproduct  $S \boxplus T = S + T$ , the disjoint union. This is compact closed under  $A^* = A$  and the dagger is the  $*$  operation, the relational converse. That is, if the relation  $R = \{(s, t) | s \in S, t \in T\} : S \rightarrow T$ , then  $R^\dagger = R^* = \{(t, s) | (s, t) \in R\}$ .

**Example 2.3.10** (Inverse categories). An inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  is also a dagger category when the dagger is defined as the partial inverse. The unitary maps are the total maps. When the inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  is also a symmetric monoidal category where the monoid  $\otimes$  is actually a restriction bi-functor, then  $\mathbb{X}$  is a dagger symmetric monoidal category.

Requirement (i) of Definition 2.3.4 is fulfilled, as

$$(f \otimes g)(f \otimes g)^{(-1)} = \overline{f \otimes g} = \bar{f} \otimes \bar{g} = f f^{(-1)} \otimes g g^{(-1)} = (f \otimes g)(f^{(-1)} \otimes g^{(-1)})$$

and since the partial inverse of  $f \otimes g$  is unique,  $(f \otimes g)^{(-1)} = f^{(-1)} \otimes g^{(-1)}$ . Requirement (ii) is that the structure isomorphisms are unitary. This is, of course, true as each of them are isomorphisms, hence total and therefore unitary.

## 2.4 Frobenius Algebras

Frobenius algebras are defined as a finite dimensional algebra over a field together with a non-degenerate pairing operation. We will continue with the definitions that make this precise.

### 2.4.1 Frobenius algebra definitions

**Definition 2.4.1.** Given a symmetric monoidal category  $\mathbb{D}$ , a *Frobenius algebra* is an object  $X$  of  $\mathbb{D}$  and four maps,  $\nabla : X \otimes X \rightarrow X$ ,  $\eta : I \rightarrow X$ ,  $\Delta : X \rightarrow X \otimes X$  and  $\epsilon : X \rightarrow I$ , with the conditions that  $(X, \nabla, e)$  forms a commutative monoid,  $(X, \Delta, \epsilon)$  forms a commutative



comonoid and the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
X \otimes X & \xrightarrow{X \otimes \Delta} & X \otimes X \otimes X & & \\
\downarrow \Delta \otimes X & \searrow \nabla & & \downarrow \nabla \otimes X & \\
& X & & & \\
& \searrow \Delta & & & \\
X \otimes X \otimes X & \xrightarrow{X \otimes \nabla} & X \otimes X & & 
\end{array}$$

commutes. The Frobenius algebra is *special* when  $\Delta \nabla = 1_X$  and *commutative* when  $\Delta c_{X,X} = \Delta$ . Note that special is sometimes referred to as *separable*.

**Definition 2.4.2.** A Frobenius algebra in a dagger symmetric monoidal category where  $\Delta = \nabla^\dagger$  and  $\epsilon = \eta^\dagger$  is a  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra.

For an example of a  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra, consider a finite dimensional Hilbert space  $H$  with an orthonormal basis  $\{|\phi_i\rangle\}$  and define  $\Delta : H \rightarrow H \otimes H : |\phi_i\rangle \mapsto |\phi_i\rangle \otimes |\phi_i\rangle$  and  $\epsilon : H \rightarrow \mathbb{C} : |\phi_i\rangle \mapsto 1$ . Then  $(H, \nabla = \Delta^\dagger, \eta = \epsilon^\dagger, \Delta, \epsilon)$  forms a commutative special  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra.

#### 2.4.2 Bases and Frobenius Algebras

In [19], Coecke et. al. provide an algebraic description of orthogonal bases in finite dimensional Hilbert spaces. Additionally, an orthonormal basis for such a space is a special commutative  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra. To show the other direction, given a commutative  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra,  $(H, \nabla, \eta)$  and for each element  $\alpha \in H$ , define the right action of  $\alpha$  as  $R_\alpha := (id \otimes \alpha) \nabla : H \rightarrow H$ . Note the use of the fact that elements  $\alpha \in H$  can be considered as linear maps  $\alpha : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow H : 1 \mapsto |\alpha\rangle$ . The dagger of a right action is also a right action,  $R_\alpha^\dagger = R_{\alpha'}$  where  $\alpha' = \eta \nabla (id \otimes \alpha^\dagger)$ , which is a consequence of the Frobenius identities.

The  $(-)'$  construction is actually an involution:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\alpha')' &= \eta \nabla(id \otimes \alpha'^{\dagger}) \\
&= u \nabla(id \otimes (\eta \nabla(id \otimes \alpha^{\dagger}))^{\dagger}) \\
&= u \nabla(id \otimes ((id \otimes \alpha) \Delta \epsilon)) \\
&= (u \otimes \alpha)(\nabla \otimes id)(id \otimes \Delta)(id \otimes \epsilon) \\
&= (u \otimes \alpha)(id \otimes \Delta)(\nabla \otimes id)(id \otimes \epsilon) \\
&= (u \otimes \alpha)(id \otimes \epsilon) \\
&= \alpha
\end{aligned}$$

**Lemma 2.4.3.** *Any  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra in  $\mathbf{FDHILB}$  is a  $C^*$ -algebra.*

*Proof.* The endomorphism monoid of  $\mathbf{FDHILB}$   $(H, H)$  is a  $C^*$ -algebra. From the proceeding, we have

$$H \cong \mathbf{FDHILB}(\mathbb{C}, H) \cong R_{[\mathbf{FDHILB}(\mathbb{C}, H)]} \subseteq \mathbf{FDHILB}(H, H).$$

This inherits the algebra structure from  $\mathbf{FDHILB}(H, H)$ . Furthermore, since any finite dimensional involution-closed sub-algebra of a  $C^*$ -algebra is also a  $C^*$ -algebra, this shows the  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra is a  $C^*$ -algebra.  $\square$

Using the fact that the involution preserving homomorphisms from a finite dimensional commutative  $C^*$ -algebra to  $\mathbb{C}$  form a basis for the dual of the underlying vector space, write these homomorphisms as  $\phi_i^{\dagger} : H \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ . Then their adjoints,  $\phi_i : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow H$  will form a basis for the space  $H$ . These are the copyable elements in  $H$ .

This, together with continued applications of the Frobenius rules and linear algebra allow the authors to prove the following Theorem.

**Theorem 2.4.4.** *Every commutative  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra in  $\mathbf{FDHILB}$  determines an orthogonal basis consisting of its copyable elements. Conversely, every orthogonal basis  $\{|\phi_i\rangle\}_i$*

determines a commutative  $\dagger$ -Frobenius algebra via

$$\Delta : H \rightarrow H \otimes H : |\phi_i\rangle \mapsto |\phi_i\rangle \otimes |\phi_i\rangle \quad \epsilon : H \rightarrow \mathbb{C} : |\phi_i\rangle \mapsto 1$$

and these constructions are inverse to each other.

### 2.4.3 Quantum and classical data

In [18], Coecke et.al. build on the results of [19] to start from a  $\dagger$ -symmetric monoidal category and construct the minimal machinery needed to model quantum and classical computations. For the rest of this section,  $\mathbb{D}$  will be assumed to be such a category, with  $\otimes$  the monoid tensor and  $I$  the unit of the monoid.

**Definition 2.4.5.** A compact structure on an object  $A$  in the category  $\mathbb{D}$  is given by the object  $A$ , an object  $A^*$  called its *dual* and the maps  $\eta : I \rightarrow A^* \otimes A$ ,  $\epsilon : A \otimes A^* \rightarrow I$  such that the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A^* & & \\ \eta \otimes A^* \downarrow & \searrow id & \\ A^* \otimes A \otimes A^* & \xrightarrow{A^* \otimes \epsilon} & A^* \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{A \otimes \eta} & A \otimes A^* \otimes A \\ & \searrow id & \downarrow \epsilon \otimes A \\ & & A \end{array}$$

commute.

**Definition 2.4.6.** A *quantum structure* is an object  $A$  and map  $\eta : I \rightarrow A \otimes A$  such that  $(A, A, \eta, \eta^\dagger)$  form a compact structure.

Note that  $A$  is self-dual in definition 2.4.6.

This allows the creation of the category  $\mathbb{D}_q$  which has as objects quantum structures and maps are the maps in  $\mathbb{D}$  between the objects in the quantum structures.

In the category  $\mathbb{D}_q$ , it is now possible to define the upper and lower  $*$  operations on maps, such that  $(f_*)^* = (f^*)_* = f^\dagger$ :

$$\begin{aligned} f^* &:= (\eta_A \otimes 1)(1 \otimes f \otimes 1)(1 \otimes \eta_B^\dagger), \\ f_* &:= (\eta_B \otimes 1)(1 \otimes f^\dagger \otimes 1)(1 \otimes \eta_A^\dagger). \end{aligned}$$

Next, define a classical structure on  $\mathbb{D}$ .

**Definition 2.4.7.** A *classical structure* in  $\mathbb{D}$  is an object  $X$  together with two maps,  $\Delta : X \rightarrow X \otimes X$ ,  $\epsilon : X \rightarrow I$  such that  $(X, \Delta^\dagger, \epsilon^\dagger, \Delta, \epsilon)$  forms a special Frobenius algebra.

As above, this allows us to define  $\mathbb{D}_c$ , the category whose objects are the classical structures of  $\mathbb{D}$ . The maps in  $\mathbb{D}_c$  are given by the maps in  $\mathbb{D}$  between the objects of the classical structure.

Note that a classical structure will induce a quantum structure, setting  $\eta_X$  to be  $\epsilon_X^\dagger \Delta_X$ .

Later on, in [3.3](#), we will show that commutative special Frobenius algebras possess a specialized inverse category structure.

# Chapter 3

## Inverse categories

This chapter will focus on adding “products” to an inverse category.

We will show below an inverse category which has restriction products is a restriction pre-order. Given this, by “product”, we mean a structure that behaves in a product-like manner in an inverse category which we call these *inverse products*. These will be defined below in Sub-Section 3.2.1: Inverse products are given by a natural structure on a tensor product which includes a diagonal but lacks projections. The diagonal map is required to give a natural Frobenius structure on each object.

### 3.1 Inverse categories with restriction products

We start by showing that an inverse category with restriction products is a restriction pre-order and thus, is too restrictive a notion.

**Definition 3.1.1.** Two parallel maps  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  in a restriction category are *compatible*, written as  $f \smile g$ , when  $\overline{f}g = \overline{g}f$ .

**Definition 3.1.2.** A restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  is a *restriction pre-order* when all parallel pairs of maps are compatible.

**Proposition 3.1.3.** *Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , if it has restriction products, it is a restriction pre-order. That is,*

$$A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{f} \\ \xrightarrow{g} \end{array} B \implies f \smile g.$$

*Proof.* Notice that  $\pi_1^{(-1)} = \Delta\pi_1\pi_1^{(-1)} = \Delta\overline{\pi_1} = \Delta$ . This gives  $\overline{\pi_1^{(-1)}} = 1$  and therefore  $\pi_1$  (and similarly,  $\pi_0$ ) is an isomorphism.

Starting with the product map  $\langle f, g \rangle$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle f, g \rangle &= \langle f, g \rangle \\ \overline{\langle f, g \rangle \pi_1 \pi_1^{(-1)}} &= \overline{\langle f, g \rangle \pi_0 \pi_0^{(-1)}} \\ \overline{\overline{f g \pi_1^{(-1)}}} &= \overline{\overline{g f \pi_0^{(-1)}}} \\ \overline{\overline{f g \Delta}} &= \overline{\overline{g f \Delta}} \\ \overline{\overline{f g}} &= \overline{\overline{g f}} \end{aligned}$$

which shows that  $f$  and  $g$  are compatible.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.1.4.**  *$\mathbb{X}$  is a Cartesian inverse category if and only if  $Total(K_r(\mathbb{X}))$  is a meet pre-order.*

*Proof.*  $Total(\mathbb{X})$ , the subcategory of total maps on  $\mathbb{X}$ , has products and therefore every pair of parallel maps is compatible. As total compatible maps are equal, there is at most one map between any two objects. Hence,  $Total(\mathbb{X})$  is a pre-order with the meet being the product.

Similarly, from [14] and [16],  $Total(K_r(\mathbb{X}))$  is an inverse category and has products and is therefore also a meet pre-order. This shows the “only if” side of the corollary.

For the other direction, if  $Total(K_r(\mathbb{X}))$  is a meet pre-order, define the product as the meet of the maps and the terminal object as the supremum of all maps.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.1.5.** *Every Cartesian inverse category is a full subcategory of a partial map category of a meet semi-lattice.*

## 3.2 Inverse products

### 3.2.1 Inverse product definition

**Definition 3.2.1.** An *inverse product* on an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  is given by an tensor  $\otimes$ , a restriction bi-functor. The tensor makes  $\mathbb{X}$  a symmetric monoidal category and there is a natural “semi-Frobenius” diagonal map,  $\Delta$ . Additionally, we define the map  $ex_\otimes : (A \otimes B) \otimes (C \otimes D) \rightarrow (A \otimes C) \otimes (B \otimes D)$ :

$$ex_\otimes = a_\otimes(1 \otimes a_\otimes^{(-1)})(1 \otimes (c_\otimes \otimes 1))(1 \otimes a_\otimes)a_\otimes^{(-1)}.$$

The diagonal map  $\Delta_A : A \rightarrow A \otimes A$  must be total and create a co-semigroup without units. It must satisfy the diagrams in Figures 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & A \otimes A \\
 & \searrow \Delta & \downarrow c_{\otimes} \\
 & & A \otimes A
 \end{array}$$

**Figure 3.1:** Co-commutativity for an inverse product.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & & A \otimes A & \\
 \Delta \downarrow & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes \Delta & \\
 A \otimes A & & & A \otimes (A \otimes A) & \\
 & \searrow \Delta \otimes 1 & & \nearrow a_{\otimes} & \\
 & (A \otimes A) \otimes A & & & 
 \end{array}$$

**Figure 3.2:** Co-associativity for an inverse product.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \otimes B & \xrightarrow{\Delta \otimes \Delta} & (A \otimes A) \otimes (B \otimes B) \\
 \Delta \searrow & & \nearrow ex_{\otimes} \\
 & (A \otimes B) \otimes (A \otimes B) & 
 \end{array}$$

**Figure 3.3:** Exchange in an inverse product.

Thus,  $\Delta$  is a co-commutative, co-associative map which together with  $\Delta^{(-1)}$  forms a special semi-Frobenius algebra. We use the prefix “semi-” as we are not requiring the unit laws of a Frobenius algebra as per Definition 2.4.1.

**Remark 3.2.2.** Note also, co-commutativity implies that  $c_{\otimes} \Delta^{(-1)} = \Delta^{(-1)}$ . One can see this as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Delta(c_{\otimes} \Delta^{(-1)}) &= (\Delta c_{\otimes}) \Delta^{(-1)} = \Delta \Delta^{(-1)} = \overline{\Delta} \text{ and} \\
 (c_{\otimes} \Delta^{(-1)}) \Delta &= (c_{\otimes} \Delta^{(-1)}) (\Delta c_{\otimes}) = \overline{c_{\otimes} \Delta^{(-1)}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{(\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} & A \otimes (A \otimes A) \\
\downarrow (1 \otimes \Delta)a_{\otimes}^{(-1)} & \searrow \Delta^{(-1)} & \downarrow 1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)} \\
(A \otimes A) \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1} & A \otimes A
\end{array}$$

**Figure 3.4:** Frobenius law in an inverse product.

This means that both  $\Delta^{(-1)}$  and  $c_{\otimes}\Delta^{(-1)}$  are partial inverses for  $\Delta$  and are therefore equal.

Similarly, one can show that  $(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)\Delta^{(-1)} = a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)\Delta^{(-1)}$  as

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta(\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)\Delta^{(-1)} &= \Delta(1 \otimes \Delta)a_{\otimes}a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)\Delta^{(-1)} \\
&= \Delta(1 \otimes \Delta)(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)\Delta^{(-1)} \\
&= \Delta\Delta^{(-1)}\Delta\Delta^{(-1)} = 1.
\end{aligned}$$

Inverse products are extra structure on an inverse category, rather than a property. An example to demonstrate this is given next.

**Example 3.2.3** (Inverse products are additional structure).

Any discrete category (i.e., a category with only the identity arrows) is a trivial inverse category. To create an inverse product on a discrete category, add a commutative, associative, idempotent multiplication, with a unit.

Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be the discrete category with four objects  $a, b, c$  and  $d$ . Then, define two different inverse product tensors,  $\otimes$  and  $\odot$ , with  $d$  the unit of each as shown in Table 3.1.

As  $\mathbb{D}$  is discrete,  $\Delta$  is forced to be the identity. One can check easily that each of the the conditions for being an inverse product are satisfied by  $\otimes$  and by  $\odot$  with the trivial diagonal.

### 3.2.2 Diagrammatic Language

While it is certainly possible to prove results about inverse products using direct algebraic manipulation, it is much more convenient to understanding to proceed with string diagram



$\otimes$	a	b	c	d
a	a	a	a	a
b	a	b	<b>b</b>	b
c	a	<b>b</b>	c	c
d	a	b	c	d

$\odot$	a	b	c	d
a	a	a	a	a
b	a	b	<b>a</b>	b
c	a	<b>a</b>	c	c
d	a	b	c	d

**Table 3.1:** Two different inverse products on the same category.


circuits. See [48] for a comparison of various graphical languages for monoidal categories. As shown in [29], diagrammatic reasoning is equivalent to reasoning algebraically for symmetric monoidal categories.

In the diagrams, we will use the following representations:

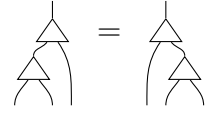
- $\Delta$  will be represented by an upward pointing triangle:  $\triangle$ .
- $\Delta^{(-1)}$  by a downward triangle:  $\nabla$ .
- maps by a rectangle with the name of the map inside:  $\boxed{f}$ .
- unit introduction (often referred to as an  $\eta$  map):  $\circ$ .
- unit removal (often referred to as an  $\epsilon$  map):  $\bullet$ .

String diagrams in this thesis are to be read from top to bottom.

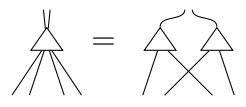
The axioms of Definition 3.2.1 then become:



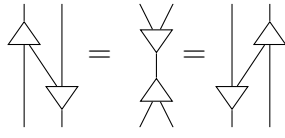
Co-commutativity



Co-associativity



Exchange



Frobenius

### 3.2.3 Discrete inverse categories

**Definition 3.2.4.** If an inverse category has inverse products as in Definition 3.2.1, we call it a *discrete inverse category*.

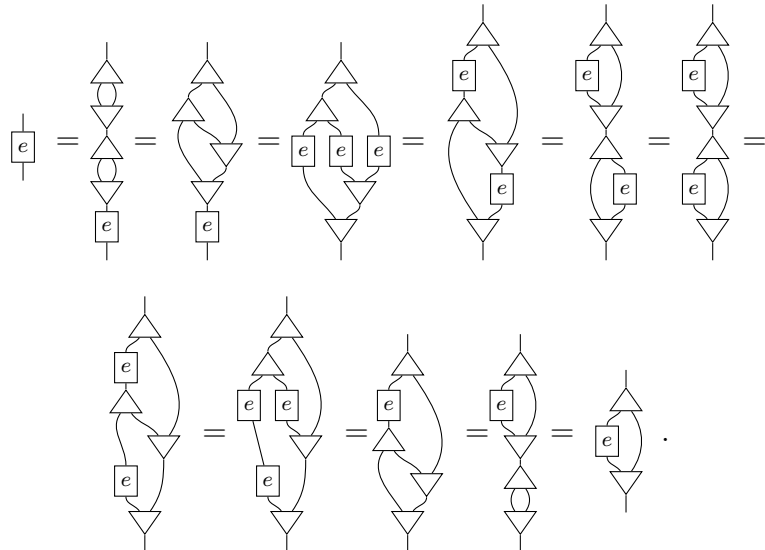
In this Sub-Section we will present some properties of discrete inverse categories. This will form the basis for our eventual goal, that of connecting discrete inverse categories to Cartesian restriction categories. The connection between them will be given as a functor that lifts a discrete inverse category to a discrete Cartesian restriction category.

**Lemma 3.2.5.** *In a discrete inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with the inverse product  $\otimes$  and  $\Delta$ , where  $e = \bar{e}$  is a restriction idempotent and  $f, g, h$  are arrows in  $\mathbb{X}$ , the following are true:*

- (i)  $e = \Delta(e \otimes 1)\Delta^{(-1)}$ .
- (ii)  $e\Delta(f \otimes g) = \Delta(e f \otimes g)$  (and  $= \Delta(f \otimes e g)$  and  $= \Delta(e f \otimes e g)$ .)
- (iii)  $(f \otimes g e)\Delta^{(-1)} = (f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}e$  (and  $= (f e \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}$  and  $= (f e \otimes g e)\Delta^{(-1)}$ .)
- (iv)  $\overline{\Delta(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}} = \Delta(1 \otimes g f^{(-1)})\Delta^{(-1)}$ .
- (v) If  $\Delta(h \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)} = \overline{\Delta(h \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}}$  then  $(\Delta(h \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)})h = \Delta(h \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}$ .
- (vi)  $\Delta(f \otimes 1) = \Delta(g \otimes 1) \implies f = g$ .
- (vii)  $(f \otimes 1) = (g \otimes 1) \implies f = g$ .

*Proof.*

(i)



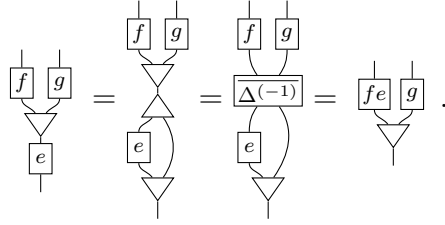
- (ii) This equality uses the previous equality, the commutativity of restriction idempotents ([R.2]) and the identity  $\overline{\Delta\Delta^{(-1)}} = \Delta$ .



The second equality  $(e\Delta(f \otimes g) = \Delta(f \otimes eg))$  follows by co-commutativity.

The third equality,  $(e\Delta(f \otimes g) = \Delta(ef \otimes eg))$  follows by naturality of  $\Delta$ .

- (iii) As in (ii), details are only given for the first equality. This proof is obtained by reversing the diagrams of (ii).



The other equalities follow for the same reasons as in (ii).

- (iv) Here, we start by using the fact all maps have a partial inverse, therefore we have:

$$\overline{\Delta(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}} = \Delta(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}\Delta(f^{(-1)} \otimes g^{(-1)})\Delta^{(-1)}.$$

Now, we proceed with showing the rest of the equality via diagrams.



(v) Beginning with the assumption that  $\Delta(h \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}$  equals its restriction and by item (iv), we have:

(vi) Our assumption is that:

Hence,

(vii) Use the same diagrammatic argument as in item (vi).

□

**Proposition 3.2.6.** *A discrete inverse category has meets, where  $f \cap g = \Delta(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)}$ .*

*Proof.*  $f \cap g \leq f$ :

$$f \cap f = f:$$

$$f \cap f = \Delta(f \otimes f)\Delta^{(-1)} = f\Delta\Delta^{(-1)} = f\Delta.$$

$$h(f \cap g) = hf \cap hg:$$

$$\begin{aligned} h(f \cap g) &= h\Delta(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)} && \text{Definition of } \cap \\ &= \Delta(h \otimes h)(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)} && \Delta \text{ natural} \\ &= \Delta(hf \otimes hg)\Delta^{(-1)} && \text{compose maps} \\ &= hf \cap hg && \text{Definition of } \cap. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Example 3.2.7** (PINJ is a discrete inverse category). In the inverse category PINJ (see Example 2.2.19), suppose we add the tensor given by the Cartesian product of sets. In detail, this means:

$$\begin{aligned} A \otimes B &= \{(a, b) | a \in A, b \in B\} \\ f \otimes g &= \{((a, c), (b, d)) | (a, b) \in f, (c, d) \in g\} \\ 1 &= \{*\}, \text{ a single element set.} \end{aligned}$$

The symmetric monoid isomorphisms are:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{\otimes}^l : \{(*, a)\} &\mapsto \{a\} && u_{\otimes}^r : \{(a, *)\} \mapsto \{a\} \\ a_{\otimes} : \{((a, b), c)\} &\mapsto \{(a, (b, c))\} && c_{\otimes} : \{(a, b)\} \mapsto \{(b, a)\} \end{aligned}$$

Define  $\Delta_A = \{(a, (a, a)) | a \in A\}$ . Then PINJ is a discrete inverse category with the inverse product of  $\otimes$ . The required properties of co-commutativity, co-associativity and exchange are immediately obvious. To show the Frobenius rule for  $\Delta$ , first note that  $\Delta^{(-1)}$  is defined only on the elements of  $A \otimes A$  which agree in the first and second co-ordinate. We show the upper triangle of the Frobenius diagram in detail. Equation (3.1) shows the result of applying  $\Delta$  followed by  $\Delta^{(-1)}$ .

$$\Delta(\Delta^{(-1)}(A \otimes A)) = \Delta(\{a | (a, a) \in A \otimes A\}) = \{(a, a) | (a, a) \in A \otimes A\}. \quad (3.1)$$

Applying  $(\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}$  to  $A \otimes A$  is shown in Equation (3.2).

$$a_{\otimes}(\Delta \otimes 1(A \otimes A)) = a_{\otimes}(\{((a, a), a') | (a, a') \in A \otimes A\} = \{(a, (a, a')) | (a, a') \in A \otimes A\}. \quad (3.2)$$

Finally, applying  $1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)}$  to the result of Equation (3.2) gives us Equation (3.3).

$$(1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)})(\{(a, (a, a')) | (a, a') \in A \otimes A\} = \{(a, a) | (a, a) \in A \otimes A\}. \quad (3.3)$$

Thus, we have  $\Delta^{(-1)}\Delta = (\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}(1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)})$  and the Frobenius condition is satisfied.

### 3.2.4 The inverse subcategory of a discrete restriction category

Given a discrete restriction category, one can pick out the maps which are partial isomorphisms. Using results from Sub-Section 3.2.3 and from Sub-Section 2.2.8, we will show that these maps form a subcategory which is a discrete inverse category.

**Proposition 3.2.8.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is a discrete restriction category, the partial isomorphisms of  $\mathbb{X}$ , together with the objects of  $\mathbb{X}$  form a sub-restriction category which is a discrete inverse category. For the restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , we denote this sub-category by  $Inv(\mathbb{X})$ .*

*Proof.* As shown in Lemma 2.2.16, partial isomorphisms are closed under composition. The identity maps are in  $Inv(\mathbb{X})$  and restrictions of partial isomorphisms are also partial isomorphisms.

The product on the discrete restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  becomes the tensor product of the restriction category  $Inv(\mathbb{X})$ . Table 3.2 shows how each of the elements of the tensor are defined. Note that the last definition makes explicit use of the fact we are in a discrete restriction category and hence the  $\Delta$  of  $\mathbb{X}$  possesses a partial inverse.

The monoid coherence diagrams follow directly from the characteristics of the product in  $\mathbb{X}$ . Similarly,  $\Delta$  is total as it is total in  $\mathbb{X}$ . It remains to show co-commutativity, co-associativity and the Frobenius condition.

Co-commutativity requires  $\Delta c_{\otimes} = c_{\otimes}$ . This means we need

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}\langle \pi_1, \pi_0 \rangle = \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}.$$

$\mathbb{X}$	$Inv(\mathbb{X})$	Inverse map
$A \times B$	$A \otimes B$	
$\top$	$1$	
$\pi_1: \top \times A \rightarrow A$	$u_{\otimes}^l: 1 \otimes A \rightarrow A$	$\langle !, 1 \rangle$
$\pi_0: A \times \top \rightarrow A$	$u_{\otimes}^r: A \otimes 1 \rightarrow A$	$\langle 1, ! \rangle$
$a_{\mathbb{X}} = \langle \pi_0 \pi_0, \langle \pi_0 \pi_1, \pi_1 \rangle \rangle: (A \times B) \times C \rightarrow A \times (B \times C)$	$a_{\otimes}: (A \otimes B) \otimes C \rightarrow A \otimes (B \otimes C)$	$\langle \langle \pi_0, \pi_1 \pi_0 \rangle, \pi_1 \pi_1 \rangle$
$c_{\mathbb{X}} = \langle \pi_1, \pi_0 \rangle: A \times B \rightarrow B \times A$	$c_{\otimes}: A \otimes B \rightarrow B \otimes A$	$\langle \pi_1, \pi_0 \rangle$
$\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}: A \rightarrow A \times A$	$\Delta: A \rightarrow A \otimes A$	$\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}$

**Table 3.2:** Structural maps for the tensor in  $Inv(\mathbb{X})$

Once again, this follows immediately from the definition of the restriction product.

Co-associativity requires  $\Delta(1 \otimes \Delta) = \Delta(\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}$ . Expressing this in  $\mathbb{X}$ , is the requirement that

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}) = \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)a_{\mathbb{X}}$$

which follows from the properties of the restriction product.

The semi-Frobenius requirement is two-fold:

$$\Delta^{(-1)}\Delta = (\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}(1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)}) \quad (3.4)$$

$$\Delta^{(-1)}\Delta = (1 \otimes \Delta)a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1), . \quad (3.5)$$

In  $\mathbb{X}$ , these become:

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} = (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)\langle \pi_0 \pi_0, \langle \pi_0 \pi_1, \pi_1 \rangle \rangle(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}) \quad (3.6)$$

$$\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} = (1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}})\langle \langle \pi_0, \pi_1 \pi_0 \rangle, \pi_1 \pi_1 \rangle(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \times 1). \quad (3.7)$$

We will give the details of the proof for Equation (3.6). Equation (3.7) may be proven similarly.

Note first that  $\Delta(1 \times !)$  (and  $\Delta(! \times 1)$ ) is the identity. Second, we see that maps to a product of objects may be expressed as a pairing — i.e. if  $f: A \rightarrow B \times B$ , then  $f = \langle f(1 \times !), f(! \times 1) \rangle$ .

Using this we see that the left hand side of Equation (3.6) may be computed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} &= \langle \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}(1 \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}(! \times 1) \rangle \\ &= \langle \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}, \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, removing the associativity maps, the right hand side of the same equation becomes:

$$\begin{aligned}(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}) &= \langle (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})(1 \times !), (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})(! \times 1) \rangle \\ &= \langle (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})(1 \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}})(1 \times ! \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \overline{\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}})(1 \times ! \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle (\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1) \overline{1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}}(1 \times ! \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})}(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times ! \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})}(1 \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{(\Delta_{\mathbb{X}} \times 1)(1 \times \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)})(! \times 1)(1 \times !)}, \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle \overline{\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}}(1 \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}\Delta_{\mathbb{X}}(1 \times !), \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle \\ &= \langle \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)}, \Delta_{\mathbb{X}}^{(-1)} \rangle\end{aligned}$$

and therefore we see that the first equation for the Frobenius condition is satisfied. Thus,  $Inv(\mathbb{X})$  is a discrete inverse category.  $\square$

### 3.3 The category of Commutative Frobenius Algebras

**Example 3.3.1** (Commutative Frobenius algebras). Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be a symmetric monoidal category and form  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  as follows:

Objects: Commutative Frobenius algebras [31]: A quintuple  $(A, \nabla, \eta, \Delta, \epsilon)$  where  $A$  is an object of  $\mathbb{X}$  with the following maps:  $\nabla : A \otimes A \rightarrow A$ ,  $\eta : I \rightarrow A$ ,  $\Delta : A \rightarrow A \otimes A$ ,



$\epsilon : A \rightarrow I$  which are natural maps in  $\mathbb{X}$ , with  $(A, \nabla, \eta)$  a monoid and  $(A, \Delta, \epsilon)$  a co-monoid. Additionally, these satisfy

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\Delta \otimes 1} & A \otimes (A \otimes A) \text{ and} \\
 \downarrow 1 \otimes \Delta & \searrow \nabla & \downarrow 1 \otimes \nabla \\
 (A \otimes A) \otimes A & \xrightarrow{\nabla \otimes 1} & A \otimes A \\
 \text{Frobenius} & & 
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 A \otimes B & \xrightarrow{\Delta \otimes \Delta} & (A \otimes A) \otimes (B \otimes B) \\
 \downarrow \Delta & & \downarrow \epsilon \otimes \epsilon \\
 (A \otimes B) \otimes (A \otimes B) & = & (A \otimes B) \otimes (A \otimes B) \\
 \text{Exchange} & & 
 \end{array}$$

together with the additional property that  $\Delta \nabla = 1$ .

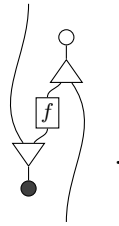
**Maps:** The maps of  $\mathbb{X}$  between the objects of  $\mathbb{X}$  which preserve multiplication ( $\nabla$ ) and co-multiplication ( $\Delta$ ) but do not necessarily preserve the units.

**Lemma 3.3.2.** *When  $\mathbb{X}$  is a symmetric monoidal category,  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  is a inverse category.*

*Proof.* We need to show that  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  has restrictions and that each map has a partial inverse. We do this by exhibiting the partial inverse of a map. For  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , define  $f^{(-1)}$  as

$$Y \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \eta} Y \otimes X \xrightarrow{1 \otimes \Delta} Y \otimes X \otimes X \xrightarrow{1 \otimes f \otimes 1} Y \otimes Y \otimes X \xrightarrow{\nabla \otimes 1} Y \otimes X \xrightarrow{\epsilon \otimes 1} X.$$

As a string diagram, this looks like:



If  $f^{(-1)}$  is truly a partial inverse, we may then define  $\bar{f} = f f^{(-1)}$ . Using Theorem 2.20

from [14], we need only show:

$$(f^{(-1)})^{(-1)} = f \quad (3.8)$$

$$ff^{(-1)}f = f \quad (3.9)$$

$$ff^{(-1)}gg^{(-1)} = gg^{(-1)}ff^{(-1)}. \quad (3.10)$$

We also use the following two identities from [31]:

$$(1 \otimes \eta)\nabla = id \quad (3.11)$$

$$\Delta(1 \otimes \epsilon) = id. \quad (3.12)$$

Diagrammatically, this is:

$$\begin{array}{c} \circ \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \nabla \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} | \\ | \\ | \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \triangle \\ \bullet \end{array}.$$

Proof of Equation (3.8):  $(f^{(-1)})^{(-1)} =$

Proof of Equation (3.9):  $ff^{(-1)}f =$

Proof of Equation (3.10):  $ff^{(-1)}gg^{(-1)} =$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{Diagram 1} = \text{Diagram 2} = \text{Diagram 3} = \text{Diagram 4} = \text{Diagram 5} = \text{Diagram 6} = gg^{(-1)}ff^{(-1)}
\end{array}$$

where the last step is accomplished by reversing all the previous diagrammatic steps. Hence,  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse category.  $\square$

**Theorem 3.3.3.** *When  $\mathbb{X}$  is a symmetric monoidal category,  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  is a discrete inverse category.*

*Proof.* Lemma 3.3.2 shows  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse category. We need only show the conditions of Definition 3.2.1 are met.

By assumption, as we are working with Frobenius algebras over a symmetric tensor  $\otimes$ , we immediately have the Frobenius rule, co-commutativity and co-associativity. We also assume the Exchange rule, hence the tensor fulfills the conditions of being an inverse product and therefore  $\text{CFrob}(\mathbb{X})$  is a discrete inverse category.  $\square$

### 3.4 Completing a discrete inverse category

The purpose of this section is to prove that the category of discrete inverse categories is equivalent to the category of discrete Cartesian restriction categories. In order to prove this, we show how to construct a discrete Cartesian restriction category,  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , from a discrete inverse category,  $\mathbb{X}$ .

We begin by giving the construction of  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ . This is followed by the details of the equivalence relation and then the proof that  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a discrete Cartesian restriction category.

**Definition 3.4.1.** When  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category, define  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  as:

**Objects:** objects as in  $\mathbb{X}$ ;

**Maps:** A map  $(f, C) : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is the equivalence class of the map  $f : A \rightarrow B \otimes C$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  (detailed below in Definition 3.4.2). We have the following relationship between maps in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  and  $\mathbb{X}$ :

$$\frac{A \xrightarrow{(f, C)} B \text{ in } \widetilde{\mathbb{X}}}{A \xrightarrow{f} B \otimes C \text{ in } \mathbb{X}};$$

**Identity:** by

$$\frac{A \xrightarrow{(u_{\otimes}^r(-1), 1)} A}{A \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^r(-1)} A \otimes 1};$$

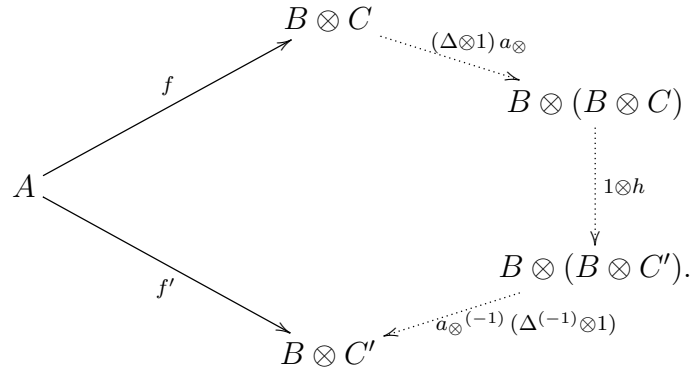
**Composition:** given by

$$\frac{\frac{A \xrightarrow{(f, B')} B \xrightarrow{(g, C')} C}{A \xrightarrow{f(g \otimes 1) a_{\otimes}} C \otimes (C' \otimes B')}}{A \xrightarrow{(f(g \otimes 1) a_{\otimes}, C' \otimes B')} C}.$$

When considering an  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  map  $(f, C) : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ , we occasionally use the notation  $f : A \rightarrow B|_C (\equiv f : A \rightarrow B \otimes C)$ .

### 3.4.1 Equivalence classes of maps in $\mathbb{X}$

**Definition 3.4.2.** In a discrete inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , the map  $f$  is equivalent to  $f'$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  when  $\overline{f} = \overline{f'}$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  and Diagram 3.5 commutes for some map  $h$ .



**Figure 3.5:** Equivalence diagram for constructing maps in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

**Notation 3.4.3.** When  $f$  is equivalent to  $g$  as in Definition 3.4.2 via the mediating map  $h$ , this is written as:

$$f \stackrel{h}{\simeq} g.$$

**Lemma 3.4.4.** Definition 3.4.2 gives a symmetric, reflexive equivalence class of maps in  $\mathbb{X}$ .

*Proof.*

**Reflexivity:** Choose  $h$  as the identity map.

**Symmetry:** Suppose  $f \stackrel{h}{\simeq} g$ . Then,  $\bar{f} = \bar{g}$  and  $fk = g$  where

$$k = (\Delta \otimes 1) a_{\otimes} (1 \otimes h) a_{\otimes}^{(-1)} (\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1).$$

Applying  $k^{(-1)}$ , which is

$$(\Delta \otimes 1) a_{\otimes} (1 \otimes h^{(-1)}) a_{\otimes}^{(-1)} (\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1),$$

we have

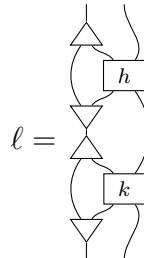
$$gk^{(-1)} = fkk^{(-1)} = f\bar{k} = \bar{f}k = \bar{g}f = \bar{f}f = f.$$

Thus,  $g \stackrel{h^{(-1)}}{\simeq} f$ .

**Transitivity:** Suppose  $f \stackrel{h}{\simeq} f'$  and  $f' \stackrel{k}{\simeq} f''$ . Consider the compositions of the mediating portions of the equivalences:

$$\ell = ((\Delta \otimes 1) a_{\otimes} (1 \otimes h) a_{\otimes}^{(-1)} (\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)) ((\Delta \otimes 1) a_{\otimes} (1 \otimes k) a_{\otimes}^{(-1)} (\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)).$$

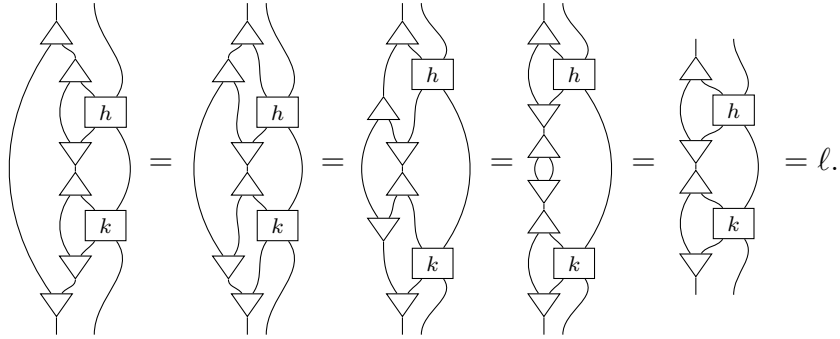
In string diagram form, this is:



$f''$ . However,  $\ell$  is not in the form of a mediating map as presented.

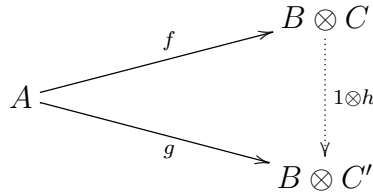
The claim is that  $\ell$  is the actual mediating map for  $f$  and  $f''$ . That is, that we have  $f(\Delta \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}(1 \otimes \ell)a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1) = f''$ . In the interest of some brevity, this is shown below with the associativity maps elided from the equations.

We need to show that  $(\Delta \otimes 1)(1 \otimes \ell)(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1) = \ell$ . Diagrammatically, the left hand side =



Thus,  $f \stackrel{\ell}{\simeq} f''$ .

**Corollary 3.4.5.** *If  $\bar{f} = \bar{g}$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ , a discrete inverse category, and the diagram*



commutes for some  $h$ , then there is a  $h'$  such that  $f \stackrel{h'}{\simeq} g$ .

*Proof.* This follows immediately from

$$\begin{array}{c} \triangleup \\ \text{---} \\ \triangleleft \end{array} \boxed{h} = \boxed{h} = 1 \otimes h.$$

Therefore we can set  $h' = 1 \otimes h$ .

### 3.4.2 The restriction category $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$

**Lemma 3.4.6.**  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  as defined above is a category.

*Proof.* The maps are well defined, as shown in Lemma 3.4.4. The existence of the identity map is due to the tensor  $\otimes$  being defined on  $\mathbb{X}$ , an inverse category, hence  $u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}$  is defined.

It remains to show the composition is associative and that  $(u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}, 1)$  acts as an identity in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

**Associativity:** Consider

$$A \xrightarrow{(f, B')} B \xrightarrow{(g, C')} C \xrightarrow{(h, D')} D.$$

To show the associativity of this in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , we need to show in  $\mathbb{X}$  that

$$\overline{(f(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes})(h \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} = \overline{f(((g(h \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes})}$$

and that there exists a mediating map between the two of them.

To see that the restrictions are equal, first note that by the functoriality of  $\otimes$ , for any two maps  $u$  and  $v$ , we have  $uv \otimes 1 = (u \otimes 1)(v \otimes 1)$ . Second, the naturality of  $a_{\otimes}$  gives us that  $a_{\otimes}(h \otimes 1) = ((h \otimes 1) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{f(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}(h \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}(h \otimes 1)\overline{a_{\otimes}}} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\ &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}(h \otimes 1)} && \overline{a_{\otimes}} = 1 \\ &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)((h \otimes 1) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} && a_{\otimes} \text{ natural} \\ &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)((h \otimes 1) \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\ &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)((h \otimes 1) \otimes 1)(a_{\otimes} \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\ &= \overline{f((g(h \otimes 1)a) \otimes 1)} && \text{see above} \\ &= \overline{f((g(h \otimes 1)a) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} && a_{\otimes}. \end{aligned}$$

For the mediating map, see the diagram below, where the calculation is in  $\mathbb{X}$ . The path starting at the top left at  $A$  and going right to  $D_{|D' \otimes (C' \otimes B')}$  is grouping parentheses to the

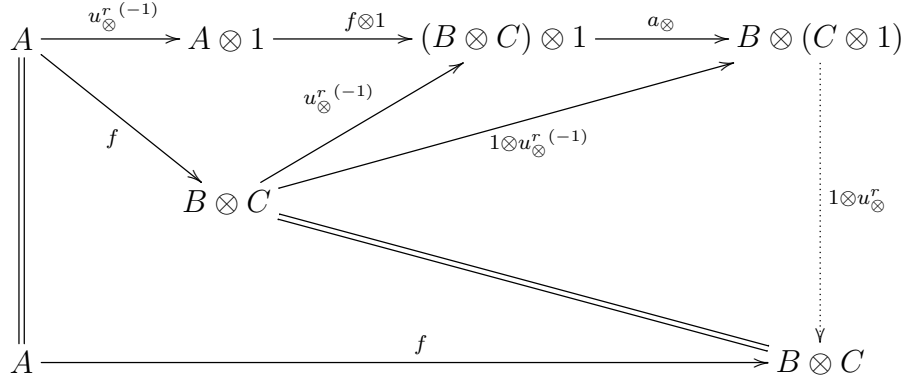
$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f(g \otimes 1) a_\otimes} & C|_{C' \otimes B'} & \xrightarrow{h \otimes 1} & (D|_{D'})|_{C' \otimes B'} & \xrightarrow{a_\otimes} & D|_{D' \otimes (C' \otimes B')} \\
\downarrow f & \searrow f(g \otimes 1) & \uparrow a_\otimes & & \uparrow a_\otimes & & \vdots 1 \otimes a_\otimes^{(-1)} \\
B|_{B'} & \xrightarrow{g \otimes 1} & (C|_{C'})|_{B'} & \xrightarrow{(h \otimes 1) \otimes 1} & ((D|_{D'})|_{C'})|_{B'} & & \\
\downarrow (g(h \otimes 1) a_\otimes) \otimes 1 & & \nearrow a_\otimes \otimes 1 & & & & \\
(D|_{D' \otimes C'})|_{B'} & \xrightarrow{a_\otimes} & & & & & D|_{(D' \otimes C') \otimes B'}.
\end{array}$$
$$(f(g \otimes 1) a_{\otimes})(h \otimes 1) a_{\otimes} \stackrel{1 \otimes a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}}{\cong} f(((g(h \otimes 1) a_{\otimes}) \otimes 1) a_{\otimes})$$

for all maps  $A \xrightarrow{(f,C)} B$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ . By Lemma 2.2.3 we have  $\overline{f(u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} = \overline{f}$ . Then, calculating in  $\mathbb{X}$ , we have a mediating map of  $1 \otimes u_{\otimes}^l$  as shown below.

69



$\overline{u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} = \bar{f}$  by the naturality of  $u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}$  and Lemma 2.2.3. The diagram



shows our mediating map is  $1 \otimes u_{\otimes}^r$ . □

Define the restriction in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  as follows:

$$\frac{\frac{A \xrightarrow{(f,C)} B}{A \xrightarrow{(f,C)} A}}{A \xrightarrow{\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} A \otimes 1 \text{ in } \mathbb{X}.$$

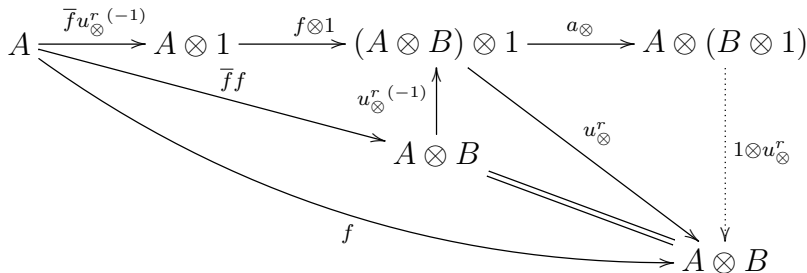
**Lemma 3.4.7.** *The category  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  with restriction defined as above is a restriction category.*

*Proof.* Given the above definition the four restriction axioms must now be checked. For the remainder of this proof, all diagrams will be in  $\mathbb{X}$ .

[R.1] ( $\bar{f}f = f$ ). Calculating the restriction of the left hand side in  $\mathbb{X}$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} &= \overline{\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\ &= \overline{\bar{f}fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural} \\ &= \overline{fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && [\mathbf{R.1}] \text{ in } \mathbb{X} \\ &= \bar{f} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3.} \end{aligned}$$

Then, the following diagram



shows  $\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)a_{\otimes} \stackrel{1 \otimes u_{\otimes}^r}{\simeq} f$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  and therefore  $\overline{f}f = f$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

[R.2]  $(\overline{g}f = \overline{f}g)$ . We must show

$$\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}((\overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes} \simeq \overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}((\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}. \quad (3.13)$$

The restriction of the left hand side equals the restriction of the right hand side as seen below:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}((\overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} &= \overline{\overline{f}(\overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}a_{\otimes}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural} \\ &= \overline{\overline{g}f u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}a_{\otimes}} && [\text{R.2}] \text{ in } \mathbb{X} \\ &= \overline{\overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}((\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}) \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural.} \end{aligned}$$

The below diagram commutes by the naturality of  $u_{\otimes}^r$  and the tensor coherence,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} & A \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{(\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}) \otimes 1} & (A \otimes 1) \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{a_{\otimes}} & A \otimes (1 \otimes 1) \\ & \searrow \overline{g}f & & \nearrow u_{\otimes}^r u_{\otimes}^r & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes id \\ & & A \otimes 1 & & A & & \\ & \downarrow \overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} & & \nearrow u_{\otimes}^r u_{\otimes}^r & \nwarrow u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} & & \\ & & (A \otimes 1) \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{a_{\otimes}} & A \otimes (1 \otimes 1) & & \end{array}$$

which allows us to conclude  $\overline{f}g = \overline{g}f$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

[R.3]  $(\overline{\overline{f}g} = \overline{f}g)$ . We must show

$$\overline{(\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} \simeq \overline{(\overline{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(\overline{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}}. \quad (3.14)$$

As above, the first step is to show that the restrictions of each side of Equation (3.14) are

the same. Computing the restriction of the left hand side in  $\mathbb{X}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{\overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}}} &= \overline{\overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}}} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{\bar{f}gu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}a_{\otimes}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural} \\
&= \overline{\bar{f}g} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \bar{f}\bar{g} && [\mathbf{R.3}] \text{ in } \mathbb{X}.
\end{aligned}$$

The restriction of the right hand side computes in  $\mathbb{X}$  as:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{\bar{f}\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural} \\
&= \overline{\bar{f}\bar{g}} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \bar{f}\bar{g} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3.}
\end{aligned}$$

Additionally, we see  $\overline{\bar{f}g}$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is expressed in  $\mathbb{X}$  as:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} \\
&= \bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}\overline{g \otimes 1} && [\mathbf{R.3}], [\mathbf{R.4}] \\
&= \bar{f}\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} && \otimes \text{a restriction bi-functor, } u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural.}
\end{aligned}$$

The following diagram in  $\mathbb{X}$  follows the right hand side of Equation (3.14) with the top curved arrow and the left hand side of Equation (3.14) with the bottom curved arrow. Note

that we are using that  $\overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} = \bar{f}\bar{g}$  as shown above.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \overline{\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} \\
 \curvearrowright \\
 \begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & A & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} & A \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{\bar{g} \otimes 1} & A \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1} & (A \otimes 1) \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{a_{\otimes}} & A \otimes (1 \otimes 1) \\
 & \searrow \bar{f} & \parallel & \downarrow u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow 1 \otimes u_{\otimes}^r & \downarrow \\
 & & A & & A & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} & A & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} & A \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & A \otimes 1 \\
 & \searrow \bar{f}\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} & & & & & & & & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & & & & & & & A \otimes 1.
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

Hence, in  $\mathbb{X}$ ,  $\overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \stackrel{1 \otimes u_{\otimes}^r}{\simeq} \overline{(\bar{f}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}}$  and therefore  $\overline{\bar{f}g} = \bar{f}\bar{g}$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

**[R.4]** ( $\bar{f}\bar{g} = \overline{\bar{f}gf}$ ). We must show

$$f(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes} \simeq \overline{f(g \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}}. \quad (3.15)$$

The restriction of the left hand side of Equation (3.15) is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \overline{f(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} &= \overline{f(\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
 &= \overline{f\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} \otimes \bar{f} && \otimes \text{restriction functor} \\
 &= \bar{f}\bar{g} \otimes \bar{f} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
 &= \overline{f(\bar{g} \otimes 1)}
 \end{aligned}$$

and the restriction of the right hand side of Equation (3.15) is:

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{f(g \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}} &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural} \\
&= \overline{f(\bar{g} \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && [\mathbf{R.4}] \text{ for } \mathbb{X} \\
&= \overline{f(\bar{g} \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && \otimes \text{ a restriction functor} \\
&= \overline{f(\bar{g} \otimes 1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3.}
\end{aligned}$$

Computing the right hand side of Equation (3.15) in  $\mathbb{X}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{f(g \otimes 1)a_{\otimes}}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}(f \otimes 1)a_{\otimes} &= \overline{f(g \otimes 1)fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}a_{\otimes}} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural,} \\
&= f(\bar{g} \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}a_{\otimes} && [\mathbf{R.4}].
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \otimes C & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1} & (B \otimes 1) \otimes C & \xrightarrow{a_{\otimes}} & B \otimes (1 \otimes C) \\
& \searrow f & & & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \\
& & B \otimes C & \xrightarrow{\bar{g} \otimes 1} & B \otimes C & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} & (B \otimes C) \otimes 1 \xrightarrow{a_{\otimes}} B \otimes (C \otimes 1)
\end{array}$$

and hence,  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a restriction category. □

3.4.3 The category  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a discrete restriction category

**Lemma 3.4.8.** *The unit of the inverse product in  $\mathbb{X}$  is the terminal object in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .*

*Proof.* The unique map to the terminal object for any object  $A$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is the equivalence class of maps represented by  $(u_{\otimes}^{l(-1)}, A)$ . For this to be a terminal object, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\overline{(f,C)}} & X & \xrightarrow{!_X} & \top \\
\downarrow (f,C) & & & \nearrow !_Y & \\
Y & & & & 
\end{array}$$

must commute for all choices of  $f$ . Translating this to  $\mathbb{X}$ , this is the same as requiring

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} & X & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^r(-1)} & X \otimes 1 & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^l(-1)} & 1 \otimes X \otimes 1 \\
 \downarrow f & & & & & & \swarrow 1 \otimes (u_{\otimes}^r f) \\
 Y \otimes C & \xrightarrow{u_{\otimes}^l(-1)} & 1 \otimes Y \otimes C & & & & 
 \end{array}$$

to commute, which is true by [R.1] and from the coherence diagrams for the inverse product tensor.  $\square$

Next, we show that the category  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  has restriction products, given by the action of  $\widetilde{(-)}$  on the  $\otimes$  tensor in  $\mathbb{X}$ .

First, define total maps  $\pi_0, \pi_1$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  by:

$$\pi_0 : A \otimes B \xrightarrow{(1, B)} A, \quad (3.16)$$

$$\pi_1 : A \otimes B \xrightarrow{(c_{\otimes}, A)} B. \quad (3.17)$$

**Definition 3.4.9.** Given a discrete inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , suppose we are given the maps  $Z \xrightarrow{(f, C)} A$  and  $Z \xrightarrow{(g, C')} B$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ . Then define  $\langle (f, C), (g, C') \rangle$  as

$$Z \xrightarrow{(\Delta(f \otimes g)(1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1), C \otimes C')} A \otimes B \quad (3.18)$$

where associativity is assumed as needed. Note that with the associativity maps, this is actually:

$$Z \xrightarrow{(\Delta(f \otimes g) a_{\otimes} (1 \otimes a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}) (1 \otimes (c_{\otimes} \otimes 1)) (1 \otimes a_{\otimes}) a_{\otimes}^{(-1)}, C \otimes C')} A \otimes B. \quad (3.19)$$

**Lemma 3.4.10.** On  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ ,  $\otimes$  is a restriction product with projections  $\pi_0, \pi_1$  and the product of maps  $f, g$  being  $\langle f, g \rangle$ .

*Proof.* From the definition above, as  $1$  and  $c_{\otimes}$  are isomorphisms, the maps  $\pi_0, \pi_1$  are total.

In order to show that  $\overline{\langle f, g \rangle} = \overline{f} \overline{g}$ , first reduce the left hand side:

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{\langle f, g \rangle} &= \overline{\Delta(f \otimes g)(1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && \text{in } \mathbb{X}, \text{ definition of restriction} \\
&= \overline{\Delta(f \otimes g)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} \\
&= \overline{\Delta(\overline{f \otimes g})u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && \text{from Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{\Delta(\overline{f} \otimes \overline{g})u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && \otimes \text{ is a restriction functor} \\
&= \overline{\overline{f} \overline{g} \Delta(1 \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && \text{Lemma 3.2.5(ii) twice} \\
&= \overline{\overline{f} \overline{g} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{f} \overline{g} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3.}
\end{aligned}$$

Then, the right hand side reduces as:

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{f} \overline{g} &= \overline{f} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} (\overline{g} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes 1) a_{\otimes} && \text{in } \mathbb{X} \text{ by definitions} \\
&= \overline{f} \overline{g} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} a_{\otimes} && u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \text{ natural.}
\end{aligned}$$

The restriction of the left hand side and the right hand side, in  $\mathbb{X}$ , is  $\overline{\overline{f} \overline{g}}$ . This is done by applying Lemma 2.2.3 once on the left and thrice on the right.

Thus, this shows  $\overline{\langle f, g \rangle} = \overline{f} \overline{g}$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  where the mediating map in  $\mathbb{X}$  is  $1 \otimes u_{\otimes}^r$ .

Next, to show  $\langle f, g \rangle \pi_0 \leq f$  (and  $\langle f, g \rangle \pi_1 \leq g$ ), it is required to show  $\overline{\langle f, g \rangle \pi_0} f = \langle f, g \rangle \pi_0$ .

Calculating the left side, we see:

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{\langle f, g \rangle \pi_0} f &= \overline{\langle f, g \rangle \overline{\pi_0}} f && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\
&= \overline{\langle f, g \rangle} f && \pi_0 \text{ is total} \\
&= \overline{f} \overline{g} f && \text{by above} \\
&= \overline{g} \overline{f} f && [\mathbf{R.2}] \\
&= \overline{g} f && [\mathbf{R.1}].
\end{aligned}$$

Now, turning to the right hand side:

$$\langle f, g \rangle \pi_0 = \Delta(f \otimes g)(1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1)1 \quad \text{in } \mathbb{X}, \text{ by definition.}$$

To show these are equal in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , we need to first show the restrictions are the same in  $\mathbb{X}$  and then show there is a mediating map between the images in  $\mathbb{X}$ . The restriction of  $\bar{g}f$  is  $\bar{f}\bar{g}$  immediately by **[R.3]** and **[R.2]**. For the right hand side, calculate in  $\mathbb{X}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\Delta(f \otimes g)(1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1)} &= \overline{\Delta(f \otimes g)} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3} \\ &= \Delta(f \otimes g)(f^{(-1)} \otimes g^{(-1)})\Delta^{(-1)} && \mathbb{X} \text{ is an inverse category} \\ &= \Delta(\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g})\Delta^{(-1)} \\ &= \bar{f}\bar{g}\Delta\Delta^{(-1)} && \text{Lemma 3.2.5(ii) twice} \\ &= \bar{f}\bar{g}. \end{aligned}$$

The diagram below shows the required mediating map.

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccc} & & A \otimes C & & \\ & \nearrow f & & \searrow \Delta \otimes 1 & \\ Z & & & & A \otimes A \otimes C \\ & \nwarrow \bar{g} & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes \Delta \\ & & Z & & A \otimes A \otimes C \otimes A \otimes C \\ & \searrow \Delta & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes f^{(-1)} \\ & & Z \otimes Z & & A \otimes A \otimes C \otimes Z \\ & & \searrow f \otimes g & & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1 \otimes g \\ & & & & A \otimes A \otimes C \otimes B \otimes C' \\ & & A \otimes C \otimes B \otimes C' & & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1 \\ & & \searrow 1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1 & & A \otimes A \otimes B \otimes C \otimes C' \\ & & & & \swarrow \Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1 \otimes 1 \otimes 1 \\ & & A \otimes B \otimes C \otimes C' & & \end{array} \end{array}$$

□

At this point, we have shown that  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a restriction category with restriction products.

This leads us to the following theorem:



**Theorem 3.4.11.** *For any inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , the category  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a discrete restriction category.*

*Proof.* The fact that  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a Cartesian restriction category is immediate from Lemmas 3.4.6, 3.4.7, 3.4.8 and 3.4.10.

To show that it is discrete, we need only show that the map  $(\Delta u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}, 1)$  is in the same equivalence class as  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ 's  $\Delta(= \langle 1, 1 \rangle = \langle (u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}, 1), (u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}, 1) \rangle)$ . As both  $\Delta$  and  $u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}$  are total, the restriction of each side is the same, namely 1. The diagram below uses Corollary 3.4.5 and shows that the two maps are in the same equivalence class.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & A \otimes A \otimes 1 \\
 & \nearrow \Delta u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} & \vdots u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\Delta(u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)} \otimes u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})(1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \otimes 1)} & A \otimes A \otimes 1 \otimes 1
 \end{array}$$

□

#### 3.4.4 Equivalence of categories

This section will show that the category of discrete inverse categories (with functors that preserve the inverse tensor) is equivalent to the category of discrete restriction categories (with restriction functors which preserve the product). In the following,  $\mathbb{X}$  will always be a discrete inverse category,  $\mathbb{D}$  and  $\mathbb{B}$  will be discrete restriction categories.

We approach the equivalence proof by exhibiting the universal property for discrete inverse categories for the functor **INV** from discrete restriction categories to discrete inverse categories. The functor **INV** maps a discrete restriction category to its inverse subcategory and maps functors between discrete restriction categories to a functor having the same action

on the partial inverses. That is, given  $G : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ , then:

$$\mathbf{INV}(G) : \mathbf{INV}(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathbf{INV}(\mathbb{D})$$

$$\mathbf{INV}(G)(A) = GA \quad (\text{all objects of } \mathbb{D} \text{ are in } \text{Inv}(\mathbb{D}))$$

$$\mathbf{INV}(G)(f) = G(f) \quad (\text{restriction functors preserve partial inverse}).$$

We continue by showing the  $\eta$  and  $\varepsilon$  of the universal property are isomorphisms. First, let

$\eta : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{INV}(\tilde{\mathbb{X}})$  be an identity on objects functor. For maps  $f$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ ,  $\eta(f) = (fu_{\otimes}^r{}^{(-1)}, 1)$ .

Next, consider a functor  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{INV}(\mathbb{D})$  defined as follows:

Objects:  $F^{\#} : A \mapsto F(A)$

Arrows:  $F^{\#} : (f, C) \mapsto F(f)\pi_0$

This allows us to write the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{X} & \xrightarrow{\eta} & \mathbf{INV}(\tilde{\mathbb{X}}) \\ & \searrow F & \downarrow \mathbf{INV}(F^{\#}) \\ & & \mathbf{INV}(\mathbb{D}). \end{array} \quad (3.20)$$

In order to show this is a universal diagram, we proceed with a series of lemmas building to the result.

**Lemma 3.4.12.** *For any discrete inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , all invertible maps  $(g, C) : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  are in the equivalence class of  $(fu_{\otimes}^r{}^{(-1)}, 1)$  for some  $f : A \rightarrow B$ .*

*Proof.* As  $(g, C)$  is invertible in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , the map  $(g, C)^{(-1)} : B \rightarrow A$  exists. The map  $(g, C)^{(-1)}$  must be in the equivalence class of some map  $k : B \rightarrow A \otimes D$ . By construction, the map  $\overline{(g, C)}$  is in the equivalence class of the map  $\bar{g}u_{\otimes}^r{}^{(-1)} : A \rightarrow A \otimes 1$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ . This means, in  $\mathbb{X}$ ,

there is an  $n$  such that

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
B & \xrightarrow{k} & A \otimes D & \xrightarrow{f \otimes 1} & B \otimes C \otimes D \\
& & & & \downarrow \Delta \otimes 1 \\
& & & & B \otimes B \otimes C \otimes D \\
& & & & \vdots \\
& & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes n \\
& & & & B \otimes B \otimes 1 \\
& & & & \downarrow \Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1 \\
& & & & B \otimes 1
\end{array}$$

$\searrow \bar{k}u_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}$

commutes.

Starting with  $g : A \rightarrow B \otimes C$ , construct the map  $f$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  with the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{g} & B \otimes C \\
& & \downarrow \Delta \otimes 1 \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes C \\
& & \downarrow 1 \otimes \Delta \otimes 1 \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes B \otimes C \\
& & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes k \otimes 1 \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes A \otimes D \otimes C \\
& & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes g \otimes 1 \otimes 1 \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes B \otimes C \otimes D \otimes C \\
& & \downarrow 1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1 \otimes c_{\otimes} \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes C \otimes C \otimes D \\
& & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes \Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1 \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes C \otimes D \\
& & \downarrow 1 \otimes n \\
& & B \otimes B \otimes 1 \\
& & \downarrow (\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1)u_{\otimes}^l \\
& & B.
\end{array}$$

$\searrow f$

By its construction,  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $(fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}, 1)$  are in the same equivalence class as  $(g, C)$ .

□

**Lemma 3.4.13.**  $\eta\text{INV}(F^{\#}) = F$ .

*Proof.* Chasing maps around the diagram, we have:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 f & \xrightarrow{\eta} & (fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)}, 1) \\
 & \searrow F & \downarrow \mathbf{INV}(F^{\#}) \\
 & & F(f) = F(fu_{\otimes}^{r(-1)})\pi_0.
 \end{array}$$

As  $\eta$  is identity on the objects, Diagram (3.20) commutes.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.4.14.** *The functor  $\mathbf{INV}$  from the category of discrete restriction categories to the category of discrete inverse categories is full and faithful.*

*Proof.* To show fullness, we must show  $\mathbf{INV}$  is surjective on hom-sets. Given a functor between two categories in the image of  $\mathbf{INV}$ , i.e.,  $G : \mathbf{INV}(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathbf{INV}(\mathbb{D})$ , construct a functor  $H : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  as follows:

Action on objects:  $H(A) = G(A)$ ,

Objects on maps:  $H(f) = G(\langle f, 1 \rangle)\pi_0$ .

$H$  is well defined as we know  $\langle f, 1 \rangle$  is an invertible map and therefore in the domain of  $G$ .

To see  $H$  is a functor:

$$H(1) = G(\langle 1, 1 \rangle)\pi_0 = \Delta_{\mathbb{D}}\pi_0 = 1,$$

$$H(fg) = G(\langle fg, 1 \rangle)\pi_0 = G(\langle f, 1 \rangle)\pi_0 G(\langle g, 1 \rangle)\pi_0 = H(f)H(g).$$

But on any invertible map,  $H(f) = G(\langle f, 1 \rangle)\pi_0 = \langle G(f), 1 \rangle\pi_0 = G(f)$  and therefore  $\mathbf{INV}(H) = G$ , so  $\mathbf{INV}$  is full.

Next, assume we have  $F, G : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  with  $\mathbf{INV}(F) = \mathbf{INV}(G)$ . Considering  $F(f)$  and  $F(g)$ , we know  $F(\langle f, 1 \rangle) = G(\langle f, 1 \rangle)$  as  $\langle f, 1 \rangle$  is invertible. Thus, as the functors preserve the product structure, we have

$$F(f) = F(\langle f, 1 \rangle)F(\pi_0) = G(\langle f, 1 \rangle)G(\pi_0) = G(f).$$

Thus,  $\mathbf{INV}$  is faithful.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.4.15.** *The functor  $F^\#$  in Diagram (3.20) is unique.*

*Proof.* This follows immediately from Lemma 3.4.14, **INV** is faithful.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.4.16.** *The category  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  and functor  $\eta : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{INV}(\tilde{\mathbb{X}})$  is a universal pair for the functor **INV**.*

*Proof.* Immediate from Corollary 3.4.15 and Lemma 3.4.13.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.4.17.** *The functor  $\eta : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{INV}(\tilde{\mathbb{X}})$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* As  $\eta$  is an identity on objects functor, we need only show that it is full and faithful. Referring to Lemma 3.4.12 above, we immediately see that  $\eta$  is full. For faithful, if we assume  $(fu_\otimes^{r(-1)}, 1)$  is equal in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  to  $(gu_\otimes^{r(-1)}, 1)$ . This means in  $\mathbb{X}$ , that  $\bar{f} = \bar{g}$  and there is a  $h$  such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & B \otimes 1 & \\
 fu_\otimes^{r(-1)} \nearrow & & \searrow (\Delta \otimes 1) a_\otimes \\
 A & & B \otimes (B \otimes 1) \\
 & & \downarrow 1 \otimes h \\
 & & B \otimes (B \otimes 1) \\
 gu_\otimes^{r(-1)} \searrow & & \swarrow a_\otimes^{(-1)} (\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1) \\
 & B \otimes 1 &
 \end{array}$$

This simplifies out to  $g = f\Delta(1 \otimes h)\Delta^{(-1)}$ . But by Lemma 3.2.5, part (iv),  $\Delta(1 \otimes h)\Delta^{(-1)} = \overline{\Delta(1 \otimes h)\Delta^{(-1)}}$ . Setting  $\Delta(1 \otimes h)\Delta^{(-1)}$  as  $k$ , we have  $g = f\bar{k}$ . This gives us:

$$g = f\bar{k} = \overline{fk}f = \overline{fk}f = \bar{g}f = \bar{f}f = f.$$

This shows  $\eta$  is faithful and hence an isomorphism between  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $\mathbf{INV}(\tilde{\mathbb{X}})$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 3.4.18.** *The category of discrete inverse categories (objects are discrete inverse categories, maps are inverse tensor preserving functors) is equivalent to the category of discrete restriction categories (objects are discrete restriction categories, maps are the Cartesian restriction functors).*

*Proof.* From the above lemmas, we have shown that we have an adjoint:

$$(\eta, \varepsilon) : \mathbf{T} \vdash \mathbf{INV} : D_{ic} \rightarrow D_{rc}. \quad (3.21)$$

By Lemma 3.4.17 we know  $\eta$  is an isomorphism. But this means the functor  $\mathbf{T}$  is full and faithful, as shown in, e.g., Proposition 2.2.6 of [13]. From lemma 3.4.14 we know that  $\mathbf{INV}$  is full and faithful. But again by the previous reference, this means  $\varepsilon$  is an isomorphism. Thus, by Corollary 3.4.16 and Proposition 2.2.7 of [13] we have the equivalence of the two categories.  $\square$

### 3.4.5 Examples of the $\widetilde{(-)}$ construction

**Example 3.4.19** (Completing a finite discrete inverse category).

Continuing from Example 3.2.3, recall the discrete category of 4 elements with two different tensors. Completing these gives two different lattices. They are either the straight line lattice, or the diamond semi-lattice. Below are the details of these constructions.

Recall  $\mathbb{D}$  has four elements  $a, b, c$  and  $d$ , and there are two possible inverse product tensors, given in Table 3.1. (Repeated here for your convenience).

$\otimes$	a	b	c	d
a	a	a	a	a
b	a	b	<b>b</b>	b
c	a	<b>b</b>	c	c
d	a	b	c	d

$\odot$	a	b	c	d
a	a	a	a	a
b	a	b	<b>a</b>	b
c	a	<b>a</b>	c	c
d	a	b	c	d

**Table 3.3:** Two different inverse products on the same category.

Define  $\Delta$  as the identity map. Then, for the first tensor,  $\otimes$  of Table 3.1,  $\widetilde{\mathbb{D}}$  has the

following maps

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
a \xrightarrow{(id,a) \ (\equiv(id,b)\equiv(id,c)\equiv(id,d))} a, & a \xrightarrow{(id,a)} b, & a \xrightarrow{(id,a)} c, & a \xrightarrow{(id,a)} d \\
& b \xrightarrow{(id,b) \ (\equiv(id,c)\equiv(id,d))} b, & b \xrightarrow{(id,b)} c, & b \xrightarrow{(id,b)} d \\
& & c \xrightarrow{(id,c) \ (\equiv(id,d))} c, & c \xrightarrow{(id,c)} d \\
& & & d \xrightarrow{(id,d)} d
\end{array}$$

resulting in the straight-line  $(a \rightarrow b \rightarrow c \rightarrow d)$  lattice. The tensor in  $\mathbb{D}$  becomes the meet and hence is a categorical product in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{D}}$ . Note that the only partial inverses in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{D}}$  are the identity functions and that for all maps  $f$ ,  $\langle f, 1 \rangle = id$ .

With the second tensor,  $\odot$  from Table 3.1, we have:

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
a \xrightarrow{(id,a) \ (\equiv(id,b)\equiv(id,c)\equiv(id,d))} a, & a \xrightarrow{(id,a)} b, & a \xrightarrow{(id,a)} c, & a \xrightarrow{(id,a)} d \\
& b \xrightarrow{(id,b) \ (\equiv(id,d))} b, & b \xrightarrow{(id,b)} d & \\
& c \xrightarrow{(id,c) \ (\equiv(id,d))} c, & c \xrightarrow{(id,c)} d & \\
& & d \xrightarrow{(id,d)} d &
\end{array}$$

resulting in the “diamond” lattice,  $\begin{array}{ccc} & b & \\ a \nearrow & & \searrow d \\ & c & \end{array}$ . Once again, the tensor in  $\mathbb{D}$  becomes the meet.

**Example 3.4.20** (Lattice completion.). Suppose we have a set together with an idempotent, commutative, associative operation  $\wedge$  on the set, giving us a lattice,  $\mathbb{L}$ . Further suppose the set is partially ordered via  $\leq$  with the order being compatible with  $\wedge$ .

Then, we may create a pullback square for any  $x' \leq x$ ,  $y' \leq x$  with

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & x & & \\
& \swarrow & \leq & \searrow & \\
x' & & & & y' \\
& \swarrow & \leq & \searrow & \\
& & x' \wedge y' & &
\end{array}$$

Considering  $\mathbb{L}$  as a category, we see that all maps are monic and therefore, we may create a partial map category  $\text{Par}(\mathbb{L}, \mathcal{M})$  where the stable system of monics are all the maps.

Then  $\widetilde{\text{Par}(\mathbb{L}, \mathcal{M})}$  becomes the completion of the lattice over  $\wedge$ .

**Example 3.4.21** ( $\widetilde{\text{PINJ}}$  is  $\text{PAR}$ ). Noting that the objects of both  $\text{PINJ}$  and  $\text{PAR}$  are sets, we simply need to show that any partial function is in the equivalence class of some  $f$ , a map in  $\text{PINJ}$ .

Suppose we are given  $g : A \rightarrow B = \{(a, b) | a \in A, b \in B\}$ , a partial function in sets. Of course, if it is a partial injective function, then  $g$  is in the equivalence class of  $(g, \{*\})$  and we are done. If it is not injective, that means there are one or more elements of  $B$  which appear in the left hand element of  $g$  multiple times. Construct a new function  $h$  as follows:

$$h \doteq \{(a, (b, a)) | (a, b) \in g\} \quad (3.22)$$

By its definition,  $h : A \rightarrow B \otimes A$  is injective,  $(h, A) : A \rightarrow B$  coincides with  $g$  and therefore we see that using the  $\widetilde{(-)}$  construction on  $\text{PINJ}$  results in  $\text{PAR}$ .



# Chapter 4

## Disjointness in Inverse Categories

In this chapter we will first explore coproducts in restriction categories, showing, similar to product that this is too restrictive a notion for inverse categories. We will then turn our attention to defining a “disjointness” relation between parallel maps in an inverse category and a “disjoint join” of disjoint maps. We will conclude the chapter showing how a tensor with specific conditions can give rise to both a disjointness relation and a disjoint join.

### 4.1 Coproducts in restriction categories

#### 4.1.1 Restriction Coproducts

Restriction categories may also have coproducts and initial objects.

**Definition 4.1.1.** In a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , a coproduct is a *restriction coproduct* when the embeddings  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  are total.

**Lemma 4.1.2.** *The coproduct in a restriction category satisfies:*

- (i)  $\overline{f + g} = \overline{f} + \overline{g}$  which means  $+$  is a restriction functor.
- (ii)  $\nabla : A + A \rightarrow A$  is total.
- (iii)  $? : 0 \rightarrow A$  is total, where  $0$  is the initial object in the restriction category.

*Proof.*

(i)  $+$  **is a restriction functor**. Consider the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & A' & & \\
 \searrow \Pi_1 & & \searrow \Pi'_1 & & \\
 & A + B & \xrightarrow{f+g} & A' + B' & \\
 \nearrow \Pi_2 & & \nearrow \Pi'_2 & & \\
 B & \xrightarrow{g} & B' & & 
 \end{array}$$

In order to show  $\overline{f+g} = \overline{f} + \overline{g}$ , it suffices to show that  $\Pi_1 \overline{f+g} = \Pi_1(\overline{f} + \overline{g}) = \overline{f} \Pi_1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Pi_1 \overline{f+g} &= \overline{\Pi_1(f+g)} \Pi_1 && \text{[R.4]} \\
 &= \overline{f \Pi'_1} \Pi_1 && \text{coproduct diagram} \\
 &= \overline{f \Pi'_1 \Pi_1} && \text{Lemma 2.2.3[(iii)]} \\
 &= \overline{f} \Pi_1 && \Pi'_1 \text{ total.}
 \end{aligned}$$

(ii)  $\nabla : A + A \rightarrow A$  **is total**. By the definition of  $\nabla$  ( $= \langle 1|1 \rangle$ ) and the co-product, the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & A + A & \\
 \nearrow \Pi_1 & \downarrow \nabla & \nwarrow \Pi_2 \\
 A & = & A = A
 \end{array}$$

resulting in:

$$\Pi_1 \overline{\nabla} = \overline{\Pi_1 \nabla} \Pi_1 = \overline{1} \Pi_1 = \Pi_1.$$

Similarly,  $\Pi_2 \overline{\nabla} = \Pi_2$ , hence, the restriction of  $\nabla$  is 1 and therefore  $\nabla$  is total.

(iii)  $? : 0 \rightarrow A$  **is total**. This follows from

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 0 & \xrightarrow{\Pi_2} & A + 0 \\
 \searrow ? & & \parallel \\
 & & A
 \end{array}$$

so  $?$  can be defined as the total coproduct injection.

□

Recall that when an object is both initial and terminal, it is referred to as a zero object and denoted as 0. This gives rise to the zero map  $0_{A,B} : A \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow B$  between any two objects.

**Definition 4.1.3.** Given a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a zero object, then 0 is a *restriction zero* when for each object  $A$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  we have  $\overline{0_{A,A}} = 0_{A,A}$ .

**Lemma 4.1.4** (Cockett-Lack). *For a restriction category  $\mathbb{X}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathbb{X}$  has a restriction zero;
- (ii)  $\mathbb{X}$  has an initial object 0 and terminal object 1 and each initial map  $z_A$  is a restriction monic;
- (iii)  $\mathbb{X}$  has a terminal object 1 and each terminal map  $t_A$  is a restriction retraction.

#### 4.1.2 Inverse categories with restriction coproducts

**Proposition 4.1.5.** *An inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with restriction coproducts is a pre-order.*

*Proof.* By Lemma 4.1.2, we know  $\nabla$  is total and therefore  $\nabla\nabla^{(-1)} = 1$ . From the coproduct diagrams, we have  $\Pi_1\nabla = 1$  and  $\Pi_2\nabla = 1$ . But this gives us  $\nabla^{(-1)}\Pi_1^{(-1)} = (\Pi_1\nabla)^{(-1)} = 1$  and similarly  $\nabla^{(-1)}\Pi_2^{(-1)} = 1$ . Hence,  $\nabla^{(-1)} = \Pi_1$  and  $\nabla^{(-1)} = \Pi_2$ .

This means for parallel maps  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$ , we have

$$f = \Pi_1\langle f|g \rangle = \nabla^{(-1)}\langle f|g \rangle = \Pi_2\langle f|g \rangle = g$$

and therefore  $\mathbb{X}$  is a pre-order. □

## 4.2 Disjointness in an inverse category

In the following, we will add two related structures to an inverse category with a restriction zero and zero maps. This structure is meant to be evocative of the *join* [24] in a restriction category. We will first re-iterate some of the basic definitions and lemmas about joins.

#### 4.2.1 Joins in restriction categories

**Definition 4.2.1.** Given  $\mathbb{R}$  is a restriction category with zero maps, then  $\mathbb{R}$  is said to have *joins* whenever there is an operator  $\vee$  defined between compatible maps (from Definition 3.1.1 on page 50) such that:

- $f \leq f \vee g$  and  $g \leq f \vee g$ ,
- $\overline{f \vee g} = \overline{f} \vee \overline{g}$ ,
- $f, g \leq h$  implies that  $f \vee g \leq h$  and
- $h(f \vee g) = hf \vee hg$ .

For example, in the restriction category  $\text{PAR}$ , the join is given by:

$$(f \vee g)(x) = \begin{cases} f(x)(= g(x)) & \text{when both } f \text{ and } g \text{ are defined;} \\ f(x) & \text{when only } f \text{ is defined;} \\ g(x) & \text{when only } g \text{ is defined;} \\ \uparrow & \text{when both } f \text{ and } g \text{ are undefined.} \end{cases}$$

**Theorem 4.2.2** (Cockett-Guo). *Given a restriction category  $\mathbb{R}$  with joins, then*

$$A \xrightarrow{\Pi_1} C \xleftarrow{\Pi_2} B$$

*is a coproduct if and only iff:*

- $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  are restriction monics;
- $\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}} = 0$  and
- $\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} \vee \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}} = 1_C$ .

*Proof.* See [10]. □

**Lemma 4.2.3.** *If  $\mathbb{R}$  is a meet restriction category with joins, then the meet distributes over the join, i.e.,*

$$h \cap (f \vee g) = (h \cap f) \vee (h \cap g).$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
h \cap (f \vee g) &= \overline{(f \vee g)} h \cap (f \vee g) \\
&= (\overline{f} \vee \overline{g}) h \cap (f \vee g) \\
&= (\overline{f}(h \cap (f \vee g))) \vee (\overline{g}(h \cap (f \vee g))) \\
&= (h \cap \overline{f}(f \vee g)) \vee (h \cap \overline{g}(f \vee g)) \\
&= (h \cap (f \vee g)) \vee (h \cap (f \vee g)).
\end{aligned}$$

□

#### 4.2.2 Disjointness relations

In this subsection, we will define a disjointness relationship between maps and explore alternate characterizations of this relation on the restriction idempotents of objects.

From this point forward in the thesis, we will work with a number of relations and operations on parallel pairs of maps. Suppose we have a relation  $\diamond$  between maps  $f, g : B \rightarrow C$ , i.e.,  $f \diamond g$ . We will refer to  $\diamond$  as *stable* whenever given a  $h : A \rightarrow B$ , then  $hf \diamond hg$ . We will refer to  $\diamond$  as *universal* whenever given a  $k : C \rightarrow D$ , then  $fk \diamond gk$ .

**Definition 4.2.4.** In an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with zero maps, the relation  $\perp$  between two parallel maps  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  is called a *disjointness relation* when it satisfies the following

properties:

- [Dis.1] For all  $f : A \rightarrow B$ ,  $f \perp 0$ ;
- [Dis.2]  $f \perp g$  implies  $\overline{f}g = 0$ ;
- [Dis.3]  $f \perp g$ ,  $f' \leq f$ ,  $g' \leq g$  implies  $f' \perp g'$ ;
- [Dis.4]  $f \perp g$  implies  $g \perp f$ ; (Symmetric)
- [Dis.5]  $f \perp g$  implies  $hf \perp hg$ ; (Stable)
- [Dis.6]  $f \perp g$  implies  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ ; (Closed under range and restriction)
- [Dis.7]  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$ ,  $\hat{h} \perp \hat{k}$  implies  $fh \perp gk$ . (Determined by restriction/range.)

When  $f \perp g$ , we will say  $f$  is *disjoint* from  $g$ .

**Lemma 4.2.5.** *In Definition 4.2.4, provided we retain [Dis.1-5], we may replace [Dis.6] and [Dis.7] by:*

$$[\mathbf{Dis.6}'] \quad f \perp g \text{ if and only if } \overline{f} \perp \overline{g} \text{ and } \hat{f} \perp \hat{g}.$$

*Proof.* Given [Dis.6] and [Dis.7], the *only if* direction of [Dis.6'] is immediate. To show the *if* direction, assume  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ . This also means that  $\overline{\overline{f}} \perp \overline{\overline{g}}$ . Then, by [Dis.7],  $\overline{f}f \perp \overline{g}g$  and therefore  $f \perp g$ .

Conversely, assume we are given [Dis.6']. Then, [Dis.6] follows immediately. To show [Dis.7], assume we have  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$ ,  $\hat{h} \perp \hat{k}$ . As  $\overline{f}h \leq \overline{f}$  and  $\overline{g}k \leq \overline{g}$ , by [Dis.3], we know that  $\overline{f}h \perp \overline{g}k$ . Similarly,  $\widehat{f}h \leq \hat{h}$  and  $\widehat{g}k \leq \hat{k}$ , giving us  $\widehat{f}h \perp \widehat{g}k$ . Then, from [Dis.6'] we may conclude  $fh \perp gk$ , showing [Dis.7] holds.  $\square$

**Lemma 4.2.6.** *In an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with  $\perp$  a disjointness relation:*

- (i)  $f \perp g$  if and only if  $f^{(-1)} \perp g^{(-1)}$ ;
- (ii)  $f \perp g$  implies  $fh \perp gh$  (Universal);
- (iii)  $f \perp g$  implies  $f\hat{g} = 0$ ;

- (iv) if  $m, n$  are monic, then  $fm \perp gn$  implies  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$ ;
- (v) if  $m, n$  are monic, then  $m^{(-1)}f \perp n^{(-1)}g$  implies  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ .

*Proof.*

- (i) Assume  $f \perp g$ . By [Dis.6], we have  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ . Since  $\hat{f} = \overline{f^{(-1)}}$  and  $\overline{f} = \widehat{f^{(-1)}}$ , this means  $\overline{f^{(-1)}} \perp \overline{g^{(-1)}}$  and  $\widehat{f^{(-1)}} \perp \widehat{g^{(-1)}}$ . By [Dis.6'] from Lemma 4.2.5, we have  $f^{(-1)} \perp g^{(-1)}$ . The converse follows with a similar argument.
- (ii) Assume  $f \perp g$ . By the previous item, we have  $f^{(-1)} \perp g^{(-1)}$ . By [Dis.5],  $h^{(-1)}f^{(-1)} \perp h^{(-1)}g^{(-1)}$ , giving us  $(fh)^{(-1)} \perp (gh)^{(-1)}$ . By (i), we now have  $fh \perp gh$ .
- (iii) Assume  $f \perp g$ . From (i) and reflexivity, we know that  $g^{(-1)} \perp f^{(-1)}$  and therefore  $\overline{g^{(-1)}}f^{(-1)} = \hat{g}f^{(-1)} = 0$ . However, in an inverse category,  $0^{(-1)} = 0$  and therefore  $0 = (\hat{g}f^{(-1)})^{(-1)} = f\hat{g}^{(-1)} = f\hat{g}$ .
- (iv) Assume  $fm \perp gn$  where  $m, n$  are monic. By [Dis.6], this gives us  $\overline{fm} \perp \overline{gn}$ . By Lemma 2.2.3,  $\overline{fm} = \overline{f\overline{m}} = \overline{f}1 = \overline{f}$  and therefore  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$ .
- (v) By assumption, we have  $m^{(-1)}f \perp n^{(-1)}g$  and therefore  $f^{(-1)}m \perp g^{(-1)}n$ . By (iv), this means  $\overline{f^{(-1)}} \perp \overline{g^{(-1)}}$  and hence  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ .

□

We may define the disjointness relation via its action in  $\mathcal{O}(a)$ .

**Definition 4.2.7.** Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , a relation  $\perp_A \subseteq \mathcal{O}(A)^2$  for each  $A \in \text{ob}(\mathbb{X})$ ,

is an *open disjointness* relation when for all  $e, e' \in \mathcal{O}(A)$

$$[\mathbf{Odis.1}] \quad 1 \perp_A 0;$$

$$[\mathbf{Odis.2}] \quad e \perp_A e' \text{ implies } e' \perp_A e;$$

$$[\mathbf{Odis.3}] \quad e \perp_A e' \text{ implies } ee' = 0;$$

$$[\mathbf{Odis.4}] \quad e \perp_A e' \text{ implies } \overline{fe} \perp_B \overline{fe'} \text{ for all } f : B \rightarrow A;$$

$$[\mathbf{Odis.5}] \quad e \perp_A e' \text{ implies } \widehat{eg} \perp_C \widehat{e'g} \text{ for all } g : A \rightarrow C;$$

$$[\mathbf{Odis.6}] \quad e \perp_A e', \quad e_1 \leq e, \quad e'_1 \leq e' \text{ implies } e_1 \perp_A e'_1.$$

We will normally write  $\perp$  rather than  $\perp_A$  where the object is clear.

**Proposition 4.2.8.** *If  $\perp$  is a disjointness relation in  $\mathbb{X}$ , it is an open disjointness relation on the restriction idempotents.*

*Proof.*

$[\mathbf{Odis.1}]$  This follows immediately from  $[\mathbf{Dis.1}]$  by taking  $f = 1$ .

$[\mathbf{Odis.2}]$  Reflexivity follows directly from  $[\mathbf{Dis.4}]$ .

$[\mathbf{Odis.3}]$  By  $[\mathbf{Dis.2}]$ ,  $0 = \bar{e}e' = ee'$ .

$[\mathbf{Odis.4}]$  Given  $e \perp e'$ , we have  $fe \perp fe'$  by  $[\mathbf{Dis.5}]$ . Then, by  $[\mathbf{Dis.6}]$  we may conclude  $\overline{fe} \perp \overline{fe'}$ .

$[\mathbf{Odis.5}]$  This follows from the above item, using  $g^{(-1)}$  for  $f$ . This means we have  $\overline{g^{(-1)}e} \perp \overline{g^{(-1)}e'}$ . But this gives us  $\overline{(eg)^{(-1)}} \perp \overline{(e'g)^{(-1)}}$ . Recalling from Lemma 2.2.24 that  $\hat{k} = \overline{k^{(-1)}}$ , we may conclude  $\widehat{eg} \perp \widehat{e'g}$ .

$[\mathbf{Odis.6}]$  Assuming  $e \perp e'$  and  $e_1 \leq e, e'_1 \leq e'$ , by  $[\mathbf{Dis.3}]$ ,  $e_1 \perp e'_1$ .

Therefore,  $\perp$  acts as an open disjointness relation on  $\mathcal{O}(A)^2$ .

□



**Definition 4.2.9.** If  $\perp$  is an open disjointness relation in  $\mathbb{X}$ , then we may define a relation  ${}_A\perp_B \in \mathbb{X}(A, B)^2$  by

$$\frac{f, g : A \rightarrow B, \bar{f} \perp \bar{g}, \hat{f} \perp \hat{g}}{f {}_A\perp_B g}.$$

We call  ${}_A\perp_B$  the disjointness relation generated by  $\perp$ .

**Proposition 4.2.10.** *If  $\perp$  is the disjointness relation generated by  $\perp$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ , then  $\perp$  is a disjointness relation in  $\mathbb{X}$ .*

*Proof.*

[Dis.1] We need to show  $f \perp 0$  for any  $f$ . We know that  $1 \perp 0$  and therefore  $\bar{f} \perp 0$  and  $\hat{f} \perp 0$ , as  $\bar{f} \leq 1$  and  $\hat{f} \leq 1$ . This gives us  $f \perp 0$ .

[Dis.2] Assume  $f \perp g$ , i.e.,  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$ . Then,  $\bar{f}g = \bar{f}\bar{g}g = 0g = 0$ .

[Dis.3] We are given  $f \perp g$ ,  $f' \leq f$  and  $g' \leq g$ . By Lemma 2.2.10[(i)]  $\bar{f}' \leq \bar{f}$  and  $\bar{g}' \leq \bar{g}$ . Then, by [Odis.6], as  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$  we have  $\bar{f}' \perp \bar{g}'$ . By Lemma 2.2.22[(ii)], we have  $\hat{f}' \leq \hat{f}$  and  $\hat{g}' \leq \hat{g}$ . Then, by [Odis.6], as  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$  we have  $\hat{f}' \perp \hat{g}'$ . This means  $f' \perp g'$ .

[Dis.4] Reflexivity of  $\perp$  follows immediately from the reflexivity of  $\perp$ .

[Dis.5] Assume  $f \perp g$ , i.e.,  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ . Then we have  $\overline{hf} \perp \overline{hg}$  by [Odis.4]. By Lemma 2.2.22[(i)] we have  $\widehat{hf} \leq \hat{f}$  and  $\widehat{hg} \leq \hat{g}$ . Therefore we have  $\widehat{hf} \perp \widehat{hg}$  by [Odis.6] and therefore  $hf \perp hg$ .

[Dis.6] This follows directly from definition 4.2.9.

[Dis.7] We assume  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{h} \perp \hat{k}$ . By definition 4.2.9 we have  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{h} \perp \hat{k}$ . By Lemma 2.2.10[(ii)], we have  $\bar{f}\bar{h} \leq \bar{f}$  and  $\bar{g}\bar{k} \leq \bar{g}$ . Therefore,  $\bar{f}\bar{h} \perp \bar{g}\bar{k}$  by [Odis.6]. By Lemma 2.2.22[(i)],  $\widehat{f}\bar{h} \leq \hat{f}$  and  $\widehat{g}\bar{k} \leq \hat{g}$ , giving us  $\widehat{f}\bar{h} \perp \widehat{g}\bar{k}$  also by [Odis.6]. This means  $fh \perp gk$ .

□

**Theorem 4.2.11.** *To give a disjointness relation  $\perp$  on  $\mathbb{X}$  is to give an open disjointness relation  $\underline{\perp}$  on  $\mathbb{X}$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose we are given the disjointness relation  $\perp$ . By Proposition 4.2.8, this is an open disjointness relation on each of the sets of idempotents,  $\mathcal{O}(A)$ . We will label that relation  $\underline{\perp}$ .

Use Definition 4.2.9 to create an extended disjointness relation based on  $\underline{\perp}$ , signify it by  $\underline{\underline{\perp}}$ . By Proposition 4.2.10,  $\underline{\underline{\perp}}$  is a disjointness relation on  $\mathbb{X}$ .

Assume  $f \perp g$ . We have  $\bar{f} \underline{\perp} \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \underline{\perp} \hat{g}$  by [Dis.6] and Proposition 4.2.8. Then, from Definition 4.2.9, we have  $f \underline{\underline{\perp}} g$ .

Assume  $f \underline{\underline{\perp}} g$ . This means we must have had  $\bar{f} \underline{\perp} \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \underline{\perp} \hat{g}$  by Definition 4.2.9 and therefore  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ . By Proposition 4.2.6, we have  $f \perp g$ .

Now, suppose we are given the open disjointness relation  $\underline{\perp}$ . Similar to above, we can construct the extended disjointness relation  $\perp$  by Definition 4.2.9. From the disjointness relation  $\perp$ , we have the open disjointness relation  $\overline{\perp}$  by Lemma 4.2.8.

Assume  $e \underline{\perp} e'$ . As this means both  $\bar{e} \underline{\perp} \bar{e}'$  and  $\hat{e} \underline{\perp} \hat{e}'$ , we have  $e \perp e'$ . By Proposition 4.2.8 this means  $e \overline{\perp} e'$ .

If we are given that  $e \overline{\perp} e'$ , then we know that  $e \perp e'$  by Proposition 4.2.8. From Definition 4.2.9, this requires that  $\bar{e} \underline{\perp} \bar{e}'$  and  $\hat{e} \underline{\perp} \hat{e}'$ , but that just means  $e \underline{\perp} e'$ .  $\square$

Note that while we have worked with binary disjointness throughout this section, one may extend the concept to lists of maps simply by considering disjointness pairwise. I.e., we have  $\perp [f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n]$  if and only if  $f_i \perp f_k$  whenever  $i \neq j$ .

Disjointness is additional structure on a restriction category, i.e., it is possible to have more than one disjointness relation on the category.

**Example 4.2.12** (PINJ has a disjointness relation). Consider the inverse category PINJ, introduced in Example 2.2.8 and Example 3.2.7. We note the restriction zero is the empty set,  $\emptyset$  with initial and terminal maps being  $\emptyset$  and therefore  $0_{A,B} = \emptyset$ .

We may define the disjointness relation  $\perp$  by  $f \perp g$  if and only if  $\overline{f} \cap \overline{g} = \emptyset$  and  $\widehat{f} \cap \widehat{g} = \emptyset$ . It is then reasonably straightforward to verify [Dis.1] through [Dis.7]. For example, take [Dis.7]:

*Proof.* We are given  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$  and  $\widehat{h} \perp \widehat{k}$ . This means

$$\overline{f} \cap \overline{g} = \emptyset \text{ and } \widehat{h} \cap \widehat{k} = \emptyset.$$

As discussed in Example 2.2.14, we have  $\overline{mn} \subseteq \overline{m}$  and that  $\widehat{mn} \subseteq \widehat{n}$ . Hence we have

$$\overline{fh} \cap \overline{gk} \subseteq \overline{f} \cap \overline{g} = \emptyset$$

$$\widehat{fh} \cap \widehat{gk} \subseteq \widehat{h} \cap \widehat{k} = \emptyset.$$

Therefore,  $fh \perp gk$ . □

We may define a different disjointness relation,  $\perp'$ , on the same restriction category. Define  $f \perp' g$  if and only if one of  $f$  or  $g$  is the restriction 0,  $\emptyset$ . As  $0 = \overline{0} = \widehat{0} = h0 = 0k$ , all of the seven disjointness axioms are easily verifiable.

Although disjointness is additional structure on a restriction category, one can use the disjointness structure of a base category (or categories) to define a disjointness structure on derived categories, such as the product category.

**Lemma 4.2.13.** *If  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $\mathbb{Y}$  are inverse categories with restriction zeros and respective disjointness relations  $\perp$  and  $\perp'$ , then we may construct a disjointness relation  $\perp_{\times}$  on  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$ .*

*Proof.* Recall that product categories are defined component-wise. These definitions extend to the restriction, the inverse and the restriction zero. That is:

- If  $(f, g)$  is a map in  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$ , then  $(f, g)^{(-1)} = (f^{(-1)}, g^{(-1)})$ ;
- If  $(f, g)$  is a map in  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$ , then  $\overline{(f, g)} = (\overline{f}, \overline{g})$ ;
- The map  $(0_X, 0_Y)$  is the restriction zero in  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$ .

Following this pattern, for  $(f, g)$  and  $(h, k)$  maps in  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$ ,  $(f, g) \perp_{\times} (h, k)$  iff  $f \perp h$  and  $g \perp' k$ .

Verifying the disjointness axioms is straightforward, we show axioms 2 and 5. Proofs of the others are similar.

[Dis.2] : Given  $(f, g) \perp_{\times} (h, k)$ , we have  $\overline{(f, g)}(h, k) = (\overline{f}, \overline{g})(h, k) = (\overline{f}h, \overline{g}k) = (0, 0) = 0$ .

[Dis.5] : We are given  $(f, g) \perp_{\times} (h, k)$ . Consider the map  $z = (x, y)$  in  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$ . We know that

$$xf \perp xh \text{ and } yg \perp yk, \text{ therefore we have } z(f, g) = (xf, yg) \perp_{\times} (xh, yk) = z(h, k).$$

□

### 4.3 Disjoint joins

We now consider additional structure on the inverse category, dependent upon the disjointness relation.

**Definition 4.3.1.** An *inverse category with disjoint joins* is an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , with a restriction 0, a disjointness relation  $\perp$  and a binary operator on disjoint parallel maps:

$$\frac{f : A \rightarrow B, \ g : A \rightarrow B, \ f \perp g}{f \sqcup g : A \rightarrow B}$$

where the following hold:

$$[\mathbf{DJ.1}] \quad f \leq f \sqcup g \text{ and } g \leq f \sqcup g;$$

$$[\mathbf{DJ.2}] \quad f \leq h, \ g \leq h \text{ and } f \perp g \text{ implies } f \sqcup g \leq h;$$

$$[\mathbf{DJ.3}] \quad h(f \sqcup g) = hf \sqcup hg. \text{ (Stable)}$$

$$[\mathbf{DJ.4}] \quad \perp [f, g, h] \text{ if and only if } f \perp (g \sqcup h).$$

The binary operator,  $\sqcup$ , is referred to as the *disjoint join*.

Note that [DJ.1] with [DJ.2] immediately gives us that there is only one disjoint join given a specific disjointness relation.

**Lemma 4.3.2.** *Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  in an inverse category with disjoint joins, with the join  $\sqcup$  and that it has a second disjoint join,  $\square$ . Then  $f \sqcup g = f \square g$  for all maps  $f, g$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ .*

*Proof.* The first axiom tells us:

$$f, g \leq f \sqcup g \text{ and } f, g \leq f \square g.$$

Using the second axiom, we may therefore conclude  $f \sqcup g \leq f \square g$  and  $f \square g \leq f \sqcup g$ , hence  $f \sqcup g = f \square g$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 4.3.3.** *In an inverse category with disjoint joins, the disjoint join respects the restriction and is universal. Additionally, it is a partial associative and commutative operation, with identity 0. That is, the following hold:*

- (i)  $\overline{f \sqcup g} = \overline{f} \sqcup \overline{g}$ ;
- (ii)  $(f \sqcup g)k = fk \sqcup gk$  (Universal);
- (iii)  $f \perp g, g \perp h, f \perp h$  implies that  $(f \sqcup g) \sqcup h = f \sqcup (g \sqcup h)$ ;
- (iv)  $f \perp g$  implies  $f \sqcup g = g \sqcup f$ ;
- (v)  $f \sqcup 0 = f$ .

*Proof.*

- (i) As  $\overline{f}, \overline{g} \leq \overline{f \sqcup g}$ , we immediately have  $\overline{f} \sqcup \overline{g} \leq \overline{f \sqcup g}$ . To show the other direction, consider

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{f}(\overline{f \sqcup g})(f \sqcup g) &= (\overline{f} \overline{f} \sqcup \overline{f} \overline{g})(f \sqcup g) && \text{[DJ.3]} \\ &= \overline{f}(f \sqcup g) && \text{Lemma 2.2.3, [Dis.2]} \\ &= f. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have  $f \leq (\bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g})(f \sqcup g)$  and similarly, so is  $g$ . By [DJ.2] and that  $\bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g}$  is a restriction idempotent, we then have

$$f \sqcup g \leq (\bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g})(f \sqcup g) \leq f \sqcup g$$

and therefore  $f \sqcup g = (\bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g})(f \sqcup g)$ . By Lemma 2.2.10,  $\overline{f \sqcup g} \leq \bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g}$  and so  $\overline{f \sqcup g} = \bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g}$ .

- (ii) First consider when  $f, g$  and  $k$  are restriction idempotents, say  $e_0, e_1$  and  $e_2$ . Then, we have  $(e_0 \sqcup e_1)e_2 = e_2(e_0 \sqcup e_1) = e_2e_0 \sqcup e_2e_1 = e_0e_2 \sqcup e_1e_2$ . Next, note that for general  $f, g, h$ , we have  $fk \sqcup gk \leq (f \sqcup g)k$  as both  $fk, gk \leq (f \sqcup g)k$ . By Lemma 2.2.10, we need only show that their restrictions are equal:

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{(f \sqcup g)k} &= \overline{\overline{f \sqcup g}(f \sqcup g)k} & [\text{R.1}] \\
&= \overline{f \sqcup g} \overline{(f \sqcup g)k} & [\text{R.3}] \\
&= (\bar{f} \sqcup \bar{g}) \overline{(f \sqcup g)k} & \text{previous item} \\
&= \bar{f} \overline{(f \sqcup g)k} \sqcup \bar{g} \overline{(f \sqcup g)k} & \text{idempotent universal} \\
&= \overline{\bar{f}(f \sqcup g)k} \sqcup \overline{\bar{g}(f \sqcup g)k} & [\text{R.3}] \\
&= \overline{fk} \sqcup \overline{gk} \\
&= \overline{fk \sqcup gk}.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, as the restrictions are equal, we have shown  $(f \sqcup g)k = fk \sqcup gk$ .

- (iii) *Associativity*: Note that [DJ.4] shows that both sides of the equation exist. To show they are equal, we show that they are less than or equal to each other. From the definitions, we know that  $f \sqcup g, h \leq (f \sqcup g) \sqcup h$ , which also means  $f, g \leq (f \sqcup g) \sqcup h$ . Similarly,  $g \sqcup h \leq (f \sqcup g) \sqcup h$  and then  $f \sqcup (g \sqcup h) \leq (f \sqcup g) \sqcup h$ . Conversely,  $f, g, h \leq f \sqcup (g \sqcup h)$  and therefore  $(f \sqcup g) \sqcup h \leq f \sqcup (g \sqcup h)$  and both sides are equal.

- (iv) *Commutativity*: Note first that both  $f$  and  $g$  are less than or equal to both  $f \sqcup g$  and  $g \sqcup f$ , by [DJ.1]. By [DJ.2], we have  $f \sqcup g \leq g \sqcup f$  and  $g \sqcup f \leq f \sqcup g$  and we may conclude  $f \sqcup g = g \sqcup f$ .
- (v) *Identity*: By [DJ.1],  $f \leq f \sqcup 0$ . As  $0 \leq f$  and  $f \leq f$ , by [DJ.2],  $f \sqcup 0 \leq f$  and we have  $f = f \sqcup 0$ .

□

Note that the previous lemma and proof of associativity allows a simple inductive argument which shows that having binary disjoint joins extends to disjoint joins of an arbitrary finite collection of disjoint maps.

We will write  $[f_i]$  to signify a list of maps, where each  $f_i : A \rightarrow B$ . For disjointness,  $\perp [f_i]$  will mean that  $f_j \perp f_k$  where  $j \neq k$  and  $f_j, f_k \in [f_i]$ . Finally,  $\sqcup [f_i]$  will mean the disjoint join of all maps  $f_i$ , i.e.,  $f_1 \sqcup f_2 \sqcup \cdots \sqcup f_n$ .

**Lemma 4.3.4.** *In an inverse category with disjoint joins,  $\perp [f_i]$  if and only if  $\sqcup [f_i]$  is defined.*

*Proof.* Using [Dj.4], proceed as in the proof of Lemma 4.3.3[(iii)], inducting on  $n$ . □

**Lemma 4.3.5.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a disjoint join, then if  $f_i, g_j : A \rightarrow B$  and  $\perp [f_i]$  and  $\perp [g_j]$ , then  $\sqcup [f_i] \perp \sqcup [g_j]$  if and only if  $f_i \perp g_j$  for all  $i, j$ .*

*Proof.* Assume  $\sqcup [f_i] \perp \sqcup [g_j]$ . By [Dj.4] and associativity, we have  $\sqcup [f_i] \perp g_j$  for each  $j$ . Using the reflexivity of  $\perp$ , [Dj.4] and associativity, we have  $f_i \perp g_j$  for each  $i$  and  $j$ .

Assume  $f_i \perp g_j$  for each  $i$  and  $j$ . Then by [Dj.4] and associativity,  $f_i \perp \sqcup [g_j]$  for each  $i$ . Applying [Dj.4] again, we have  $\sqcup [f_i] \perp \sqcup [g_j]$ . □

Following the same method as in the previous section, we show that the product of two inverse categories with disjoint joins has a disjoint join.

**Lemma 4.3.6.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}, \mathbb{Y}$  are inverse categories with disjoint joins,  $\sqcup$  and  $\sqcup'$  respectively, then the category  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$  is an inverse category with disjoint joins.*

*Proof.* From Lemma 4.2.13, we know  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$  has a disjointness relation that is defined point-wise. We therefore define  $\sqcup_{\times}$  the disjoint join on  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{Y}$  by

$$(f, g) \sqcup_{\times} (h, k) = (f \sqcup h, g \sqcup' k). \quad (4.1)$$

We now prove each of the axioms in Definition 4.3.1 hold.

[DJ.1] From Equation (4.1), we see that since  $f, h \leq f \sqcup h$  and  $g, k \leq g \sqcup' k$ , we have

$$(f, g) \leq (f, g) \sqcup_{\times} (h, k) \text{ and } (h, k) \leq (f, g) \sqcup_{\times} (h, k).$$

[DJ.2] Suppose  $(f, g) \leq (x, y)$ ,  $(h, k) \leq (x, y)$  and  $(f, g) \perp_{\times} (h, k)$ . Then regarding it point-wise, we have  $(f, g) \sqcup_{\times} (h, k) = (f \sqcup h, g \sqcup' k) \leq (x, y)$ .

[DJ.3]  $(x, y) ((f, g) \sqcup_{\times} (h, k)) = (x(f \sqcup h), y(g \sqcup' k)) = (xf \sqcup xh, yg \sqcup' yk) = (xf, yg) \sqcup_{\times} (xh, yk) = ((x, y)(f, g)) \sqcup_{\times} ((x, y)(h, k))$ .

[DJ.4] Given  $\perp_{\times} [(f, g), (h, k), (x, y)]$ , we know  $f \perp (h \sqcup x)$  and  $g \perp' (k \sqcup' y)$ . Hence,  $(f, g) \perp_{\times} ((h, k) \sqcup_{\times} (x, y))$ . The opposite direction is similar.

□

**Example 4.3.7** (PINJ has a disjoint join). Continuing from Example 4.2.12, we show that PINJ has disjoint joins. If  $f = \{(a, b)\}$  and  $g = \{(a', b')\}$  are disjoint parallel maps in PINJ from  $A$  to  $B$ , define  $f \sqcup g \doteq \{(a'', b'') | (a'', b'') \in f \text{ or } (a'', b'') \in g\}$ , i.e., the union of  $f$  and  $g$ .

This is still a partial injective map, due to the requirement of disjointness. Recall that  $f \perp g$  means that  $\bar{f} \cap \bar{g} = \emptyset$  and  $\hat{f} \cap \hat{g} = \emptyset$  and that the respective meets will also be  $\emptyset$ . The empty meet of the restrictions means that  $f \sqcup g$  is still a partial function, as each  $a''$  will appear only once. The empty meet of the ranges gives us that  $f \sqcup g$  is injective, because each  $b''$  is unique.

The axioms for disjoint joins all hold:

[DJ.1] By construction, both  $f$  and  $g$  are less than  $f \sqcup g$ .



[DJ.2]  $f \leq h, g \leq h$  means that  $h$  must contain all of the  $(a, b) \in f$  and  $(a', b') \in g$  and therefore  $f \sqcup g \leq h$ .

[DJ.3] Suppose  $h : C \rightarrow A = \{(c, \dot{a})\}$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
h(f \sqcup g) &= \{(c, \dot{b}) | (\exists a, \dot{a}. \dot{a} = a, (a, \dot{b}) \in f, (c, \dot{a}) \in h) \\
&\quad \text{or } (\exists a', \dot{a}. \dot{a} = a', (a', \dot{b}) \in g, (c, \dot{a}) \in h)\} \\
&= \{(c, \dot{b}) | \exists a, \dot{a}. \dot{a} = a, (a, \dot{b}) \in f, (c, \dot{a}) \in h\} \cup \\
&\quad \{(c, \dot{b}) | \exists a', \dot{a}. \dot{a} = a', (a', \dot{b}) \in g, (c, \dot{a}) \in h\} \\
&= hf \sqcup hg
\end{aligned}$$

[DJ.4] Suppose  $\perp [f, f', f'']$ ,  $f = \{(a, b)\}$ ,  $f' = \{(a', b')\}$ ,  $f'' = \{(a'', b'')\}$ . Then the set  $\{a\}$  does not intersect either  $\{a'\}$  nor  $\{a''\}$  and similarly for the sets  $\{b\}$ ,  $\{b'\}$  and  $\{b''\}'$ . Thus we have  $f \perp (g \sqcup h)$ . The reverse direction is argued similarly.

#### 4.4 Monoidal Tensors for disjointness

When we have a monoidal tensor  $\oplus$  on  $\mathbb{X}$ , an inverse category with a restriction zero, there are certain conditions where it is possible to define disjointness based upon the action of the tensor. We are assuming the following naming for the standard monoidal tensor isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned}
u_{\oplus}^l : 0 \oplus A &\rightarrow A \\
u_{\oplus}^r : A \oplus 0 &\rightarrow A \\
a_{\oplus} : (A \oplus B) \oplus C &\rightarrow A \oplus (B \oplus C) \\
c_{\oplus} : A \oplus B &\rightarrow B \oplus A.
\end{aligned}$$

We also require the tensor isomorphisms above be natural.

**Definition 4.4.1.** Given we have an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with restriction zero and a symmetric monoidal tensor  $\oplus$ , the tensor  $\oplus$  is a *disjointness tensor* when:

- (i) It is a restriction functor — i.e.,  $_{-} \oplus _{-} : \mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$ .
- (ii) The unit is the restriction zero. ( $0 : \mathbf{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$  picks out the restriction zero in  $\mathbb{X}$ ).
- (iii) Define  $\Pi_1 = u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0) : A \rightarrow A \oplus B$  and  $\Pi_2 = u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)}(0 \oplus 1) : A \rightarrow B \oplus A$ .  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  must be jointly epic. That is, if  $\Pi_1 f = \Pi_1 g$  and  $\Pi_2 f = \Pi_2 g$ , then  $f = g$ .
- (iv) Define  $\Pi_1^* := (1 \oplus 0)u_{\oplus}^r : A \oplus B \rightarrow A$  and  $\Pi_2^* := (0 \oplus 1)u_{\oplus}^l : A \oplus B \rightarrow B$ .  $\Pi_1^*$  and  $\Pi_2^*$  must be jointly monic. That is, whenever  $f\Pi_1^* = g\Pi_1^*$  and  $f\Pi_2^* = g\Pi_2^*$  then  $f = g$ .

**Example 4.4.2** (PINJ has a disjointness tensor). In PINJ, the disjoint union,  $\uplus$ , is a disjointness tensor. We will designate elements of the disjoint union as pairs of the elements of the original sets and the order in the disjoint join. That is, when

$$A = \{a\}, B = \{b\}, \text{ then } A \uplus B = \{(x, n) | n \in \{1, 2\}, n = 1 \implies x \in A, n = 2 \implies x \in B\}.$$

Setting  $\oplus$  as  $\uplus$ , we have the identity for the tensor is  $\emptyset$ . The action of the tensor on maps  $f : A \rightarrow C = \{(a, c)\}$ ,  $g : B \rightarrow D = \{(b, d)\}$  is given by:

$$f \oplus g : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D = \{((x, n), (v, m)) | (x, v) \in f \text{ or } (x, v) \in g\}.$$

From the definition of the disjoint union, we see that the associativity map and commutativity

tensor structure maps  $(a_\oplus, c_\oplus)$  are identity maps. The unit maps are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
u_\oplus^l : 0 \oplus A &\rightarrow A, & (a, A) &\mapsto a \\
u_\oplus^r : A \oplus 0 &\rightarrow A, & (a, A) &\mapsto a \\
a_\oplus : (A \oplus B) \oplus C, & & ((a, 1), 1) &\mapsto (a, 1) \\
& & ((b, 2), 1) &\mapsto ((b, 1), 2) \\
& & (c, 2) &\mapsto ((c, 1), 2) \\
c_\oplus : A \oplus B &\rightarrow B \oplus A & (a, 1) &\mapsto (a, 2) \\
& & (a, 2) &\mapsto (a, 1)
\end{aligned}$$

The map  $\Pi_1 = u_\oplus^{r(-1)}(1 \oplus 0)$  is given by the mapping  $a \in A \mapsto (a, 1) \in A \oplus B$ . Similarly,  $\Pi_2 = u_\oplus^{l(-1)}(0 \oplus 1)$  is given by the mapping  $a \in A \mapsto (a, 2) \in B \oplus A$ . We immediately see  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  are jointly epic. Similarly,  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  are jointly monic.

**Lemma 4.4.3.** *Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with restriction zero and disjointness tensor  $\oplus$ , then the map  $0 \oplus 0 : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$  is the map  $0 : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$ .*

*Proof.* Recall the zero map factors through the restriction zero, i.e.  $0 : A \rightarrow B$  is the same as saying  $A \xrightarrow{!} 0 \xrightarrow{?} B$ . Additionally, as objects,  $0 \oplus 0 \cong 0$  — the restriction zero.

Therefore the map  $0 \oplus 0 : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$  is writable as

$$A \oplus B \xrightarrow{! \oplus !} 0 \oplus 0 \xrightarrow{? \oplus ?} C \oplus D,$$

which may then be rewritten as

$$A \oplus B \xrightarrow{! \oplus !} 0 \oplus 0 \xrightarrow{u_\oplus^l} 0 \xrightarrow{u_\oplus^{l(-1)}} 0 \oplus 0 \xrightarrow{? \oplus ?} C \oplus D.$$

But by the properties of the restriction zero,  $(! \oplus !)u_\oplus^l = !$  and  $u_\oplus^{l(-1)}(? \oplus ?) = ?$  and therefore the map  $0 \oplus 0 : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$  is the same as the map  $0 : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 4.4.4.** *Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a restriction zero and a disjointness tensor, the map  $\Pi_1$  is natural in the left component and  $\Pi_2$  is natural in the right, up to isomorphism. This means:*

$$\Pi_1(f \oplus g) = f \Pi_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \Pi_2(f \oplus g) = g \Pi_2.$$

*Proof.* For the left and right naturality, we see:

$$\Pi_1(f \oplus g) = u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0)(f \oplus g) = u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(f \oplus 0) = f u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0) = f \Pi_1,$$

and

$$\Pi_2(f \oplus g) = u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)}(0 \oplus 1)(f \oplus g) = u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)}(0 \oplus g) = g u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)}(0 \oplus 1) = g \Pi_2.$$

□

**Lemma 4.4.5.** *Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with restriction zero and disjointness tensor  $\oplus$ ,  $\Pi_1^* = \Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^* = \Pi_2^{(-1)}$  and the following identities hold:*

$$(i) \quad \Pi_i^* \Pi_i = \overline{\Pi_i^*} \text{ and } \Pi_i \Pi_i^* = \overline{\Pi_i} = 1;$$

$$(ii) \quad \overline{\Pi_1^*} \Pi_2^* = 0 \text{ and } \overline{\Pi_2^*} \Pi_1^* = 0;$$

$$(iii) \quad \Pi_2 \Pi_1^* = 0, \Pi_2 \overline{\Pi_1^*} = 0, \Pi_1 \Pi_2^* = 0 \text{ and } \Pi_1 \overline{\Pi_2^*} = 0;$$

$$(iv) \quad \text{the maps } \Pi_1 \text{ and } \Pi_2 \text{ are monic.}$$

*Proof.* For (i), recalling that the restriction zero is its own partial inverse, we see that

$$\Pi_1^{(-1)} = (u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0))^{(-1)} = (1 \oplus 0)^{(-1)} u_{\oplus}^r = (1 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r = \Pi_1^*.$$

Similarly,

$$\Pi_2^{(-1)} = (u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)}(0 \oplus 1))^{(-1)} = (0 \oplus 1) u_{\oplus}^l = \Pi_2^*.$$

Hence, we may calculate the restriction of  $\Pi_1$ ,

$$\Pi_1 \Pi_1^* = u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0)(1 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r = (u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0)) u_{\oplus}^r = 1 u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)} u_{\oplus}^r = 1.$$

The calculation for  $\Pi_2^*$  and  $\Pi_2$  is analogous.

For (ii), to show  $\overline{\Pi_1^*} \Pi_2^* = 0$  and  $\overline{\Pi_2^*} \Pi_1^* = 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\Pi_1^*} \Pi_2^* &= \overline{(1 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r} (0 \oplus 1) u_{\oplus}^l \\ &= \overline{1 \oplus 0} (0 \oplus 1) u_{\oplus}^l \\ &= (1 \oplus 0) (0 \oplus 1) u_{\oplus}^l \\ &= (0 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^l = 0,\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{\Pi_2^*} \Pi_1^* &= \overline{(0 \oplus 1) u_{\oplus}^l} (1 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r \\ &= (0 \oplus 1) (1 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r \\ &= (0 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r \\ &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

We show (iii),  $\Pi_i \Pi_j^* = 0$ ,  $\Pi_i \overline{\Pi_j^*} = 0$  when  $i \neq j$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi_1 \Pi_2^* &= (u_{\oplus}^r)^{(-1)} (1 \oplus 0) (0 \oplus 1) u_{\oplus}^l \\ &= u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)} (0 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^l \\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\Pi_2 \Pi_1^* &= (u_{\oplus}^l)^{(-1)} (0 \oplus 1) (1 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r \\ &= u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)} (0 \oplus 0) u_{\oplus}^r \\ &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

As  $\overline{\Pi_1^*} = 1 \oplus 0$  and  $\overline{\Pi_2^*} = 0 \oplus 1$ , we see the other two identities hold as well.

Finally, to prove (iv), we first show  $\Pi_1$  is monic. Suppose  $f \Pi_1 = g \Pi_1$ . Therefore we must have

$$f = f(\Pi_1 \Pi_1^{(-1)}) = (f \Pi_1) \Pi_1^{(-1)} = (g \Pi_1) \Pi_1^{(-1)} = g(\Pi_1 \Pi_1^{(-1)}) = g.$$

The proof that  $\Pi_2$  is monic follows via a similar argument.  $\square$

As we have shown that  $\Pi_i^* = \Pi_i^{(-1)}$ , we will prefer the explicit notation of  $\Pi_i^{(-1)}$  for the remainder of this chapter and in Chapter 5.

**Corollary 4.4.6.** *In an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a restriction zero and disjointness tensor, the following identities hold:*

$$\begin{aligned} (i) \quad \Pi_1(f \oplus g)\Pi_1^{(-1)} &= f; & (iii) \quad \Pi_2(f \oplus g)\Pi_1^{(-1)} &= 0; \\ (ii) \quad \Pi_1(f \oplus g)\Pi_2^{(-1)} &= 0; & (iv) \quad \Pi_2(f \oplus g)\Pi_2^{(-1)} &= g. \end{aligned}$$

Additionally, if  $t$  is a map such that for  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ ,

$$\Pi_i t \Pi_j^{(-1)} = \begin{cases} t_i & : \quad i \neq j \\ 0 & : \quad i = j, \end{cases}$$

then  $t = t_1 \oplus t_2$ .

*Proof.* The calculations for  $f \oplus g$  follow from Lemma 4.4.4 and Lemma 4.4.5. For example,  $\Pi_1(f \oplus g)\Pi_1^{(-1)} = f \Pi_1 \Pi_1^{(-1)} = f$ .

For the second claim, note that we have  $\Pi_1(t \Pi_1^{(-1)}) = t_1 = \Pi_1(t_1 \oplus t_2)\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2(t \Pi_1^{(-1)}) = 0 = \Pi_2(t_1 \oplus t_2)\Pi_1^{(-1)}$ , hence  $t \Pi_1^{(-1)} = (t_1 \oplus t_2)\Pi_1^{(-1)}$ . Similarly, we see  $t \Pi_2^{(-1)} = (t_1 \oplus t_2)\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  and therefore  $t = t_1 \oplus t_2$ .  $\square$

**Definition 4.4.7.** In an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a restriction zero and disjointness tensor, we define two partial operations on pairs of arrows in  $\mathbb{X}$  to another arrow in  $\mathbb{X}$ . First, for arrows  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : A \rightarrow C$ , we define  $f \nabla g$  as being the map that makes Diagram (4.2) below commute, when it exists.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & A & & \\ & f \swarrow & \vdots & \searrow g & \\ B & \xleftarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} & B \oplus C & \xrightarrow{\Pi_2^{(-1)}} & C \end{array} \quad (4.2)$$

Then for  $h : B \rightarrow A$ ,  $k : C \rightarrow A$ ,  $h \Delta k$  is that map that makes Diagram (4.3) commute, if it exists.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{\Pi_1} & B \oplus C & \xleftarrow{\Pi_2} & C \\
 & \searrow h & \vdots h \Delta k & \swarrow k & \\
 & & A & & 
 \end{array} \tag{4.3}$$

Due to  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  being jointly monic,  $f \nabla g$  is unique when it exists. Similarly, as  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  are jointly epic,  $f \Delta g$  is unique when it exists.

**Example 4.4.8** (PINJ). Continuing from Example 4.3.7, we see that  $f \nabla g$  can only exist when  $\bar{f} \cap \bar{g} = 0$ , as it must be a set function, i.e.,  $f \nabla g$  of some element  $a$  must be either  $(b, 1)$  when  $f(a) = b \in B$  or  $(c, 2)$  when  $g(a) = c \in C$ .

Similarly,  $h \Delta k$  can only exist when  $\hat{h} \cap \hat{k} = 0$ .

The following lemma explores the behaviour of the two operations  $\nabla$  and  $\Delta$ :

**Lemma 4.4.9.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a restriction zero and a disjointness tensor  $\oplus$  then the following relations hold for  $\nabla$  and  $\Delta$ :*

- (i) *If  $f \nabla g$  exists, then  $g \nabla f$  exists. If  $f \Delta g$  exists, then  $g \Delta f$  exists.*
- (ii)  *$f \nabla 0$  and  $f \Delta 0$  always exist.*
- (iii) *When  $f \nabla g$  exists,  $\bar{f}(f \nabla g) = f \nabla 0$ ,  $\bar{f}g = 0$ ,  $\bar{g}(f \nabla g) = 0 \nabla g$  and  $\bar{g}f = 0$ .*
- (iv) *Dually to the previous item, when  $f \Delta g$  exists,  $(f \Delta g)\hat{f} = f \Delta 0$ ,  $g\hat{f} = 0$ ,  $(f \Delta g)\hat{g} = 0 \Delta g$  and  $f\hat{g} = 0$ .*
- (v) *When  $f \nabla g$  exists,  $f \nabla g(h \oplus k) = fh \nabla gk$ .*
- (vi) *Dually, when  $f \Delta g$  exists,  $(h \oplus k)f \Delta g = hf \Delta gk$ .*
- (vii) *When  $f \nabla g$  exists, then  $h(f \nabla g) = hf \nabla hg$  and when  $f \Delta g$  exists,  $(f \Delta g)h = fh \Delta gh$ .*
- (viii) *If  $\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}$  exists, then  $\bar{f} \Delta \bar{g}$  exists and is the partial inverse of  $\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}$ .*

(ix) If  $f \nabla g$  exists and  $f' \leq f$ ,  $g' \leq g$ , then  $f' \nabla g'$  exists.

(x) When  $f \triangle g$  exists,  $(f \triangle g)(f \triangle g)^{(-1)} = \bar{f} \oplus \bar{g}$ .

(xi) Given  $f \nabla g$  and  $h \nabla k$  exist, then  $(f \oplus h) \nabla (g \oplus k) = (f \nabla g) \oplus (h \nabla k)$ . Dually, the existence of  $f \triangle g$  and  $h \triangle k$  implies  $(f \oplus h) \triangle (g \oplus k) = (f \triangle g) \oplus (h \triangle k)$ .

*Proof.*

(i)  $g \nabla f = (f \nabla g)c_{\oplus}$  and  $g \triangle f = c_{\oplus}(f \triangle g)$ .

(ii) Consider  $f\Pi_1$ . Then  $f\Pi_1\Pi_1^{(-1)} = f$  and  $f\Pi_1\Pi_2^{(-1)} = f0 = 0$ . Hence,  $f\Pi_1 = f \nabla 0$ .

Consider  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}f$ . Then  $\Pi_1\Pi_1^{(-1)}f = f$  and  $\Pi_2\Pi_1^{(-1)}f = 0f = 0$  and therefore  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}f = (f \triangle 0)$ .

(iii) Using Lemma 4.4.5

$$\bar{f}g = \overline{(f \nabla g)\Pi_1^{(-1)}}(f \nabla g)\Pi_2^{(-1)} = (f \nabla g)\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}}\Pi_2^{(-1)} = 0.$$

Similarly,  $\bar{g}f = f \nabla g\overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}}\Pi_1^{(-1)} = 0$ .

Recall that  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  are jointly monic. We have  $\bar{f}(f \nabla g)\Pi_1^{(-1)} = \bar{f}f = f = (f \nabla 0)\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\bar{f}(f \nabla g)\Pi_2^{(-1)} = \bar{f}g = 0 = (f \nabla 0)\Pi_2^{(-1)}$ . Therefore,  $\bar{f}(f \nabla g) = f \nabla 0$ . Similarly,  $\bar{g}(f \nabla g) = 0 \nabla g$ .

(iv) Using Lemma 4.4.5

$$\begin{aligned} g\hat{f} &= \Pi_2(f \triangle g)(\widehat{\Pi_1(f \triangle g)}) = \Pi_2(f \triangle g)\overline{(f \triangle g)^{(-1)}\Pi_1^{(-1)}} = \\ &= \Pi_2(f \triangle g)\overline{(f \triangle g)^{(-1)}\Pi_1^{(-1)}} = \overline{\Pi_2(f \triangle g)\Pi_1^{(-1)}}\Pi_2(f \triangle g) = \\ &= \overline{\Pi_2\Pi_1^{(-1)}(f \triangle g)}\Pi_2(f \triangle g) = \bar{0}\Pi_2(f \triangle g) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,  $f\hat{g} = 0$ .

Recall that  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  are jointly epic. We have  $\Pi_1(f \triangle g)\hat{f} = f\hat{f} = f = \Pi_1(f \triangle 0)$  and  $\Pi_2(f \triangle g)\hat{f} = g\hat{f} = 0 = \Pi_2(f \triangle 0)$ . Therefore,  $(f \triangle g)\hat{f} = f \triangle 0$ . Similarly,  $(f \triangle g)\hat{g} = 0 \triangle g$ .



(v) Calculating, we have

$$f \nabla g(h \oplus k) \Pi_1^{(-1)} = f \nabla g \Pi_1^{(-1)} h = fh$$

and

$$f \nabla g(h \oplus k) \Pi_2^{(-1)} = f \nabla g \Pi_2^{(-1)} k = gk,$$

which means that  $f \nabla g(h \oplus k) = fh \nabla gk$  by the joint monic property of  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}$ ,  $\Pi_2^{(-1)}$ .

(vi) The proof for this is dual to (v), and depends on the joint epic property of  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$ .

(vii) We are given  $f \nabla g$  exists, therefore  $f = (f \nabla g) \Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $g = (f \nabla g) \Pi_2^{(-1)}$ . But this means  $hf = h(f \nabla g) \Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $hg = h(f \nabla g) \Pi_2^{(-1)}$ , from which we may conclude  $hf \nabla hg = h(f \nabla g)$  by the fact that  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  are jointly monic. The proof of  $(f \triangle g)h = fh \triangle gh$  is similar.

(viii) We are given  $\bar{f} = \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g} \Pi_1^{(-1)}$ . Therefore,

$$\bar{f} = \bar{f}^{(-1)} = \Pi_1^{(-1)(-1)} (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})^{(-1)} = \Pi_1 (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})^{(-1)}.$$

Similarly,  $\bar{g} = \Pi_2 (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})^{(-1)}$ . But this means  $(\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})^{(-1)} = \bar{f} \triangle \bar{g}$ .

(ix) Note that from (v), we know that  $f \nabla g = \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(f \oplus g)$ . We are given  $f' \leq f$  and  $g' \leq g$ . This gives us  $\bar{f}' f = f'$ ,  $\bar{g}' g = g'$ ,  $\bar{f}' \bar{f} = \bar{f}'$  and  $\bar{g}' \bar{g} = \bar{g}'$ . Consider the map  $\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(\bar{f}' \oplus \bar{g}')(f \oplus g)$ . Calculating, we see

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(\bar{f}' \oplus \bar{g}')(f \oplus g) &= \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(\bar{f}' \oplus \bar{g}')(\bar{f}' \oplus \bar{g}')(f \oplus g) \\ &= \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(\bar{f}' \oplus \bar{g}')(f' \oplus g') \\ &= \bar{f} \bar{f}' \nabla \bar{g} \bar{g}'(f' \oplus g') \\ &= \bar{f}' \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}' \bar{g}(f' \oplus g') \\ &= \bar{f}' \nabla \bar{g}'(f' \oplus g') \\ &= f' \nabla g'. \end{aligned}$$

(x) From our diagram for  $\Delta$ , we know:

$$f^{(-1)} = (f \Delta g)^{(-1)} \Pi_1^{(-1)} \text{ and}$$

$$g^{(-1)} = (f \Delta g)^{(-1)} \Pi_2^{(-1)}.$$

As well, we know that  $\Pi_1(f \Delta g) = f$  and  $\Pi_2(f \Delta g) = g$ . Therefore, we have:

$$\Pi_1(f \Delta g)(f \Delta g)^{(-1)} \Pi_1^{(-1)} = \bar{f} \text{ and } \Pi_2(f \Delta g)(f \Delta g)^{(-1)} \Pi_2^{(-1)} = \bar{g}.$$

As  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$ , we know that  $f g^{(-1)} = f \hat{g} g^{(-1)} = 0 g^{(-1)} = 0$  and therefore,

$$\Pi_1(f \Delta g)(f \Delta g)^{(-1)} \Pi_2^{(-1)} = 0 \text{ and } \Pi_2(f \Delta g)(f \Delta g)^{(-1)} \Pi_1^{(-1)} = 0.$$

By Corollary 4.4.6 this means  $(f \Delta g)(f \Delta g)^{(-1)} = \bar{f} \oplus \bar{g}$ .

(xi) As  $(f \nabla g) \oplus (h \nabla k) \Pi_1^{(-1)} = (f \nabla g)$  and  $(f \nabla g) \oplus (h \nabla k) \Pi_2^{(-1)} = (h \nabla k)$ , we see that  $(f \nabla g) \oplus (h \nabla k)$  satisfies the diagram for  $(f \oplus h) \nabla (g \oplus k)$ . Dually, as  $\Pi_1(f \Delta g) \oplus (h \Delta k) = (f \Delta g)$  and  $\Pi_2(f \Delta g) \oplus (h \Delta k) = (h \Delta k)$ ,  $(f \Delta g) \oplus (h \Delta k)$  satisfies the diagram for  $(f \oplus h) \Delta (g \oplus k)$ .

□

**Lemma 4.4.10.** *Define  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  ( $f$  is tensor disjoint to  $g$ ) when  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  and both  $f \nabla g$  and  $f \Delta g$  exist. If  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a restriction zero and a disjointness tensor  $\oplus$  then the relation  $\perp_{\oplus}$  is a disjointness relation.*

*Proof.* We need to show that  $\perp_{\oplus}$  satisfies the disjointness axioms. We will use [Dis.6'] in place of [Dis.6] and [Dis.7] as discussed in Lemma 4.2.5.

[Dis.1] We must show  $f \perp_{\oplus} 0$ . This follows immediately from Lemma 4.4.9, item (ii).

[Dis.2] Show  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  implies  $\bar{f}g = 0$ . This is a direct consequence of Lemma 4.4.9, item (iii).

[Dis.3] We require  $f \perp_{\oplus} g, f' \leq f, g' \leq g$  implies  $f' \perp_{\oplus} g'$ . From Lemma 4.4.9, item (ix), we immediately have  $f' \nabla g'$  exists. Using a similar argument to the proof of this item, we also have  $f' \Delta g'$  exists and hence  $f' \perp_{\oplus} g'$ .

[**Dis.4**] Commutativity of  $\perp_{\oplus}$  follows from the symmetry of the two required diagrams, see Lemma 4.4.9, item (i).

[**Dis.5**] Show that if  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  then  $hf \perp_{\oplus} hg$  for any map  $h$ . By Lemma 4.4.9, item (vii), we know that  $hf \nabla hg$  exists. By item (vi),  $(hf) \Delta(hg) = (h \oplus h)(f \Delta g)$  and therefore  $hf \perp_{\oplus} hg$ .

[**Dis.6'**] We need to show  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  if and only if  $\bar{f} \perp_{\oplus} \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp_{\oplus} \hat{g}$ . This follows directly from Lemma 4.4.9, items (v) and (vi), which give us  $f \nabla g = \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(f \oplus g)$  and  $f \Delta g = (f \oplus g)\hat{f} \Delta \hat{g}$ , where the equalities hold if either side of the equation exists.

□

**Example 4.4.11** ( $\perp_{\oplus}$  in PINJ). Referring to Example 4.4.8, we noted  $f \nabla g$  exists when  $\bar{f} \cap \bar{g} = 0$  and that  $f \Delta g$  exists when  $\hat{f} \cap \hat{g} = 0$ . But this agrees with our initial definition of disjointness ( $\perp$ ) in PINJ from Example 4.2.12 and hence we have that  $\perp_{\oplus}$  is the same relation as  $\perp$  in PINJ.

The operations  $\nabla$  and  $\Delta$  are sufficient to define a disjointness relation on an inverse category. However, when we wish to extend this to a disjoint join, we need to prove [**DJ.4**], That is, we need to show that  $\perp_{\oplus}[f, g, h]$  implies  $f \perp_{\oplus}(g \sqcup_{\oplus} h)$ .

Therefore, we add one more assumption regarding our tensor in order to define disjointness.

**Definition 4.4.12.** Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be an inverse category with a disjointness tensor  $\oplus$  and a restric-

tion zero. Consider the commutative diagrams (4.4) and (4.5).

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & & \\
 \alpha \swarrow & g \searrow & \\
 X \oplus Y \oplus Z & \xrightarrow{\Pi_{1,3}^{(-1)}} & X \oplus Z \\
 f \searrow \downarrow \Pi_{1,2}^{(-1)} & & \downarrow \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 X \oplus Y & \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} & X
 \end{array} \tag{4.4}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & & A \\
 & & & h \nearrow & \\
 X \oplus Y & \xrightarrow{\Pi_{1,2}} & X \oplus Y \oplus Z & & \\
 \uparrow \Pi_1 & & \uparrow \Pi_{1,3} & \nearrow k & \\
 X & \xrightarrow{\Pi_1} & X \oplus Z & & 
 \end{array} \tag{4.5}$$

Then  $\oplus$  is a *disjoint sum tensor* when the following two conditions hold:

- $\alpha$  exists if and only if  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} \nabla g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  exists;
- $\beta$  exists if and only if  $\Pi_2 h \triangle \Pi_2 k$  exists.

**Example 4.4.13** (In  $\text{PINJ}$ ,  $\oplus$  is a disjoint sum tensor). In  $\text{PINJ}$ , Diagram (4.4) means that  $f$  and  $g$  must agree on those elements of  $A$  that map to  $(x, 1)$  in either  $X \oplus Y$  or  $X \oplus Z$ . The statement that  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} \nabla g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  exists means that if  $f(a) = (y, 2)$ , then  $g(a)$  must be undefined and vice versa. In such a case  $\alpha$  exists and is defined as:

$$\alpha(a) = \begin{cases} (x, 1) & f(a) = (x, 1) \in X \oplus Y \text{ and } g(a) = (x, 1) \text{ in } X \oplus Z \\ (y, 2) & f(a) = (y, 2) \in X \oplus Y \text{ and } g(a) \uparrow \\ (z, 3) & g(a) = (z, 2) \in X \oplus Z \text{ and } f(a) \uparrow. \end{cases}$$

Conversely, if  $\alpha$  exists,  $\alpha(a)$  must be one of  $(x, 1)$ ,  $(y, 2)$  or  $(z, 3)$ . As  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} = \alpha\Pi_{1,2}^{(-1)}\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  and  $g\Pi_2^{(-1)} = \alpha\Pi_{1,3}^{(-1)}\Pi_2^{(-1)}$ , we see this immediately requires that  $\overline{f\Pi_2^{(-1)}} \cap \overline{g\Pi_2^{(-1)}} = 0$  and therefore  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} \nabla g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  exists.

The reasoning for Diagram (4.4) is similar.

**Lemma 4.4.14.** *Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be an inverse category with a disjoint sum tensor as in Definition 4.4.12 and we are given  $f, g, h : A \rightarrow B$  with  $\perp_{\oplus}[f, g, h]$ . Then both  $f \nabla (g \nabla h)$  and  $f \Delta (g \Delta h)$  exist.*

*Proof.* As all the maps are disjoint, we know the maps  $\nabla$  and  $\Delta$  exist for each pair. Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\
 & \searrow^{g \nabla f} & \uparrow \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\
 & \alpha & B \oplus B \\
 & \searrow^{g \nabla h} & \downarrow \Pi_{0,1}^{(-1)} \\
 & & B \oplus B \xrightarrow{\Pi_{0,2}^{(-1)}} B \oplus B \\
 & & \downarrow \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 & & B \oplus B \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} B
 \end{array}$$

where we claim  $\alpha = (g \nabla h) \nabla f$ .

The lower part of the diagram commutes as it fulfills the conditions of Definition 4.4.12. The upper rightmost triangle of the diagram commutes by the definition of  $g \nabla f$ . Noting that  $\Pi_{0,1}^{(-1)} : B \oplus B \oplus B \rightarrow B \oplus B$  is the same map as  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} : (B \oplus B) \oplus B \rightarrow (B \oplus B)$  and  $\Pi_{0,2}^{(-1)} \Pi_2^{(-1)} : B \oplus B \oplus B \rightarrow B \oplus B \rightarrow B$  is the same map as  $\Pi_2^{(-1)} : (B \oplus B) \oplus B \rightarrow B$ , we see  $\alpha$  does make the  $\nabla$  diagram for  $g \nabla h$  and  $f$  commute. Therefore by Lemma 4.4.9,  $f \nabla (g \nabla h)$  exists and is equal to  $\alpha c_{\oplus\{0,1,2\}}$ .

A dual diagram and corresponding reasoning shows  $f \Delta (g \Delta h)$  exists.  $\square$

**Lemma 4.4.15.** *In an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a disjoint sum tensor, when  $\perp_{\oplus}[f, g, h]$ , then:*

- (i)  $f \nabla (g \nabla h) = ((f \nabla g) \nabla h) a_{\oplus}$  and both exist,
- (ii)  $f \Delta (g \Delta h) = ((f \Delta g) \Delta h) a_{\oplus}$  and both exist.

*Proof.* Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{h} & B \\
 & \searrow f \nabla h & \uparrow \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\
 & \alpha & B \oplus B \\
 & \searrow f \nabla g & \downarrow \Pi_{0,1}^{(-1)} \\
 & & B \oplus B \xrightarrow{\Pi_{0,2}^{(-1)}} B \oplus B \\
 & & \downarrow \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 & & B \oplus B \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} B
 \end{array} \tag{4.6}$$

which gives us  $\alpha = (f \nabla g) \nabla h : A \rightarrow (B \oplus B) \oplus B$  and  $\alpha a_{\oplus} : A \rightarrow B \oplus (B \oplus B)$ . Next consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\
 & \searrow g \nabla f & \uparrow \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\
 & \gamma & B \oplus B \oplus B \xrightarrow{\Pi_{0,2}^{(-1)}} B \oplus B \\
 & \searrow g \nabla h & \downarrow \Pi_{0,1}^{(-1)} \\
 & & B \oplus B \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} B
 \end{array} \tag{4.7}$$

which gives us  $\gamma c_{\oplus} = f \nabla (g \nabla h) : A \rightarrow B \oplus (B \oplus B)$ .

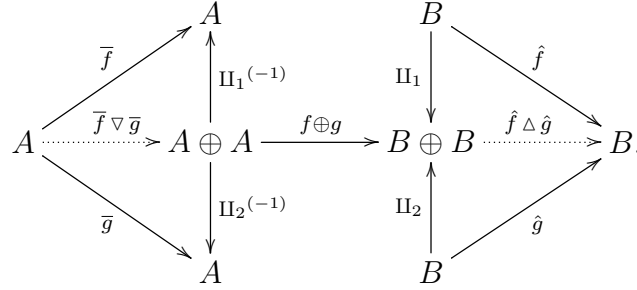
Note from Diagrams (4.6) and (4.7) we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \gamma c_{\oplus} \Pi_0^{(-1)} &= f = \alpha a_{\oplus} \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 \gamma c_{\oplus} \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_0^{(-1)} &= g = \alpha a_{\oplus} \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 \gamma c_{\oplus} \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_2^{(-1)} &= h = \alpha a_{\oplus} \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2^{(-1)}.
 \end{aligned}$$

By the assumption that  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}, \Pi_2^{(-1)}$  are jointly monic, we have  $\alpha = \gamma c_{\oplus} a_{\oplus}$ . Therefore  $f \nabla (g \nabla h) = (f \nabla g) \nabla h$ , up to the associativity isomorphism.  $\square$

**Definition 4.4.16.** Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be an inverse category with a disjointness tensor and restriction zero. Assume we have two maps  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  with  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$ . Then define the *tensor disjoint join* of  $f$  and  $g$  as the map  $f \sqcup_{\oplus} g = \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g} (f \oplus g) \hat{f} \triangle \hat{g}$ .

For reference, the map  $f \sqcup_{\oplus} g$  may be visualized as follows:



Using Lemma 4.4.9, we may rewrite this in a variety of equivalent ways:

$$\begin{aligned}
 f \sqcup_{\oplus} g &= \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g} (f \oplus g) \hat{f} \Delta \hat{g} \\
 &= f \nabla g \hat{f} \Delta \hat{g} \\
 &= \bar{f} \nabla \bar{g} f \Delta g \\
 &= f \nabla g (f^{(-1)} \oplus g^{(-1)}) f \Delta g.
 \end{aligned}$$

In particular, note that  $\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g} = (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})(\bar{f} \Delta \bar{g})$  as  $\hat{g} = \bar{g}$ .

**Example 4.4.17** (Tensor join in PINJ). We will use the third equality of those above for  $f \sqcup_{\oplus} g$ , i.e.,  $\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g} f \Delta g$ .

We have:

$$\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}(a) = \begin{cases} (a, 1) & \bar{f}(a) = a, \bar{g} \uparrow \\ (a, 2) & \bar{g}(a) = a, \bar{f} \uparrow \end{cases} \quad (4.8)$$

and

$$f \Delta g((a, n)) = \begin{cases} f(a) & n = 1 \\ g(a) & n = 2. \end{cases} \quad (4.9)$$

Combining Equation (4.8) with Equation (4.9) then gives us the same definition as that of  $\sqcup$  as given in Example 4.3.7.

**Lemma 4.4.18.** *Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be an inverse category with a disjointness tensor and restriction zero.*

*Let  $\mathbb{X}$  have the maps  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  with  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$ . Then  $\sqcup_{\oplus}$  has the following properties.*

(i) For all maps  $h : A \rightarrow B$ ,  $\overline{f}h \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g}h = (\overline{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g})h$ .

(ii)  $\overline{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g} = \overline{f \sqcup_{\oplus} g}$ .

*Proof.* (i) By Lemma 4.2.6, item (ii), we know that  $\overline{f}h \perp_{\oplus} \overline{g}h$ , hence we can form  $\overline{f}h \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g}h$ . Also, noting that

$$h\widehat{\overline{f}h} = h\overline{h^{(-1)}\overline{f}} = \overline{hh^{(-1)}\overline{f}h} = \overline{\overline{h}f}h = \overline{f}h = \overline{f}h,$$

we may then calculate from the left hand side as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{f}h \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g}h &= (\overline{f}h \nabla \overline{g}h)(\widehat{\overline{f}h} \Delta \widehat{\overline{g}h}) \\ &= (\overline{f} \nabla \overline{g})(h\widehat{\overline{f}h} \Delta h\widehat{\overline{g}h}) \\ &= (\overline{f} \nabla \overline{g})(\overline{f}h \Delta \overline{g}h) \\ &= (\overline{f} \nabla \overline{g})(\overline{f} \Delta \overline{g})h \\ &= (\overline{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g})h. \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Using Lemma 4.4.9, item (x), we can compute:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{f \sqcup_{\oplus} g} &= f \sqcup_{\oplus} g (f \sqcup_{\oplus} g)^{(-1)} \\ &= ((\overline{f} \nabla \overline{g})(f \Delta g)) \left( (f \nabla g)^{(-1)} (\overline{f} \nabla \overline{g})^{(-1)} \right) \\ &= \overline{f} \nabla \overline{g} (f \nabla g) (f \nabla g)^{(-1)} \overline{f} \Delta \overline{g} \\ &= \overline{f} \nabla \overline{g} (\overline{f} \oplus \overline{g}) \overline{f} \Delta \overline{g} \\ &= \overline{f} \nabla \overline{g} \overline{f} \Delta \overline{g} \\ &= \overline{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \overline{g}. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 4.4.19.** *Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be an inverse category with a disjoint sum tensor and restriction zero. Assume we have two maps  $f, g$  with  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$ . Then the tensor disjoint join map  $f \sqcup_{\oplus} g$  from Definition 4.4.16 is a disjoint join.*



*Proof.* [DJ.1] We must show  $f, g \leq f \sqcup_{\oplus} g$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\bar{f}(\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})f \triangle g &= (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})\Pi_1^{(-1)}(\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})f \triangle g \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})\Pi_1^{(-1)}}(\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})f \triangle g \\
&= (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}}f \triangle g \\
&= (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})\Pi_1^{(-1)}\Pi_1 f \triangle g \\
&= ((\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})\Pi_1^{(-1)})(\Pi_1(f \triangle g)) \\
&= \bar{f}f \\
&= f.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we see  $f \leq f \sqcup_{\oplus} g$ . Showing  $g \leq f \sqcup_{\oplus} g$  proceeds in the same manner.

[DJ.2] We must show that  $f \leq h$ ,  $g \leq h$  and  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  implies  $f \sqcup_{\oplus} g \leq h$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{f \sqcup_{\oplus} g}h &= \overline{\bar{f}h \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g}h}h \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h}h \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h}h \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h}(\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h \\
&= \overline{(\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h}(\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h \\
&= (\bar{f} \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g})h \\
&= (\bar{f}h \sqcup_{\oplus} \bar{g}h) \\
&= (f \sqcup_{\oplus} g).
\end{aligned}$$

[DJ.3] We must show stability of  $\sqcup_{\oplus}$ , i.e., that  $h(f \sqcup_{\oplus} g) = hf \sqcup_{\oplus} hg$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
h(f \sqcup_{\oplus} g) &= h((\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})(f \triangle g)) \\
&= (h\bar{f} \nabla h\bar{g})(f \triangle g) \\
&= (\overline{hf} \nabla \overline{hg})(f \triangle g) \\
&= (\overline{hf} \nabla \overline{hg})(h \oplus h)(f \triangle g) \\
&= (\overline{hf} \nabla \overline{hg})(hf \triangle hg) \\
&= hf \sqcup_{\oplus} hg.
\end{aligned}$$

[DJ.4] We need to show  $\perp_{\oplus}[f, g, h]$  if and only if  $f \perp_{\oplus}(g \sqcup_{\oplus} h)$ . For the right to left implication, note that the existence of  $g \sqcup_{\oplus} h$  implies  $g \perp_{\oplus} h$ . We also know  $g, h \leq g \sqcup_{\oplus} h$  by item 1 of this lemma. This gives us that  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  and  $f \perp_{\oplus} h$ , hence  $\perp_{\oplus}[f, g, h]$ . For the left to right implication, we use Lemma 4.4.14. As we have  $\perp_{\oplus}[f, g, h]$ , we know  $f \nabla(g \nabla h)$  and  $f \triangle(g \triangle h)$ .

Recall that  $g \sqcup_{\oplus} h = (g \nabla h)(\hat{g} \triangle \hat{h})$ . Then the map

$$A \xrightarrow{f \nabla(g \nabla h)} B \oplus B \oplus B \xrightarrow{1 \oplus(\hat{g} \triangle \hat{h})} B \oplus B$$

makes the diagram for  $f \nabla(g \sqcup_{\oplus} h)$  commute.

Recalling that  $g \sqcup_{\oplus} h = (\bar{g} \nabla \bar{h})(g \triangle h)$ , we also see that

$$A \oplus A \xrightarrow{1 \oplus(\bar{g} \nabla \bar{h})} A \oplus A \oplus A \xrightarrow{f \triangle(g \triangle h)} B$$

provides the witness map for  $f \triangle(g \sqcup_{\oplus} h)$  and hence  $f \perp_{\oplus}(g \sqcup_{\oplus} h)$ .

□

## 4.5 Disjointness in Frobenius Algebras

An important example of a disjointness system arises naturally from Frobenius Algebras.

**Lemma 4.5.1.** *As shown in Lemma 3.3.2  $CFrob(\mathbb{X})$  is a discrete inverse category. For  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$ , define  $f \perp g$  when*

$$\begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \boxed{f} \quad \boxed{g} \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = 0.$$

*The relation  $\perp$  is a disjointness relation.*

*Proof.* We need to show the seven axioms of the disjointness relation hold. Note that we will show **[Dis.6]** early on as its result will be used to establish some of the other axioms.

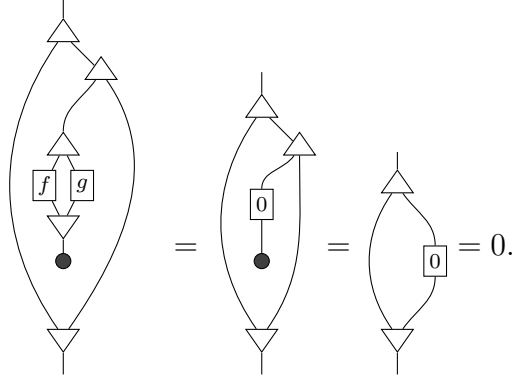
**[Dis.1]:** For all  $f : A \rightarrow B$ ,  $f \perp 0$ .

$$\begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \boxed{f} \quad \boxed{0} \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \boxed{f} \quad \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \overline{0} \\ 0 \end{array}} \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \boxed{0(=\overline{0})} \\ \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \boxed{f} \quad \boxed{0} \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = 0.$$

**[Dis.6]:**  $f \perp g$  implies  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$  and  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ .

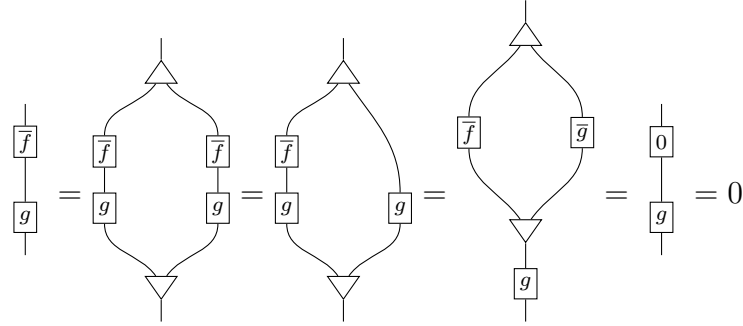
We will show the details of  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$ , using  $\bar{f} = f f^{(-1)}$  and the definition of  $f^{(-1)}$  as given in Theorem 3.3.3. The proof of  $f^{(-1)} f = \hat{f} \perp \hat{g} = g^{(-1)} g$  is similar.

$$\begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \boxed{\bar{f}} \quad \boxed{\bar{g}} \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \boxed{f} \quad \boxed{f} \quad \triangle \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \bullet \quad \triangle \quad \bullet \quad \triangle \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \triangle \quad \triangle \quad \triangle \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \quad \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \bullet \quad \triangle \quad \bullet \quad \triangle \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \triangle \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \triangle \quad \triangle \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \bullet \quad \bullet \\ \searrow \quad \swarrow \\ \triangle \end{array} =$$

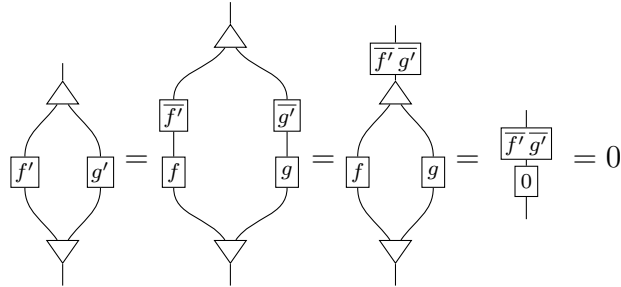


[Dis.2]:  $f \perp g$  implies  $\bar{f}g = 0$ .

In this proof, we use the result of [Dis.6], i.e., that  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$ .



[Dis.3]:  $f \perp g$ ,  $f' \leq f$ ,  $g' \leq g$  implies  $f' \perp g'$ .



[Dis.4]:  $f \perp g$  implies  $g \perp f$ .

This follows directly from the co-commutativity of  $\Delta$ .

[Dis.5]:  $f \perp g$  implies  $hf \perp hg$ .

This follows directly from the naturality of  $\Delta$ .

[Dis.7]:  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$ ,  $\hat{h} \perp \hat{k}$  implies  $fh \perp gk$ .

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 1} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 2} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 3} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 4} \end{array} = \begin{array}{c} \text{Diagram 5} \end{array} = 0.$$

The diagrams are as follows:

- Diagram 1:** A diamond-shaped graph with two vertices. The left edge is labeled  $fh$  and the right edge is labeled  $gk$ . Both edges have arrows pointing downwards.
- Diagram 2:** A diamond-shaped graph with two vertices. The left edge is labeled  $fh$  and the right edge is labeled  $gk$ . The top edge is labeled  $\bar{f}$  and the bottom edge is labeled  $\bar{h}$ . All edges have arrows pointing downwards.
- Diagram 3:** A diamond-shaped graph with two vertices. The left edge is labeled  $fh$  and the right edge is labeled  $gk$ . The top edge is labeled  $\bar{f}g$  and the bottom edge is labeled  $\bar{h}k$ . All edges have arrows pointing downwards.
- Diagram 4:** A diamond-shaped graph with two vertices. The left edge is labeled  $fh$  and the right edge is labeled  $gk$ . The top edge is labeled  $0$  and the bottom edge is labeled  $0$ . All edges have arrows pointing downwards.
- Diagram 5:** A diamond-shaped graph with two vertices. The left edge is labeled  $0$  and the right edge is labeled  $0$ . Both edges have arrows pointing downwards.

□

# Chapter 5

## Inverse sum categories

In this chapter we define inverse sum categories, an inverse category with a construction that behaves as a coproduct, but without the requirement for a coproduct map. We will show these are given by inverse categories with a disjointness tensor.

We then show inverse sum categories are equivalent to their matrix categories and are, in fact Unique Decomposition Categories [25].

In the final part of the chapter, we consider inverse categories with both an inverse sum and inverse product, where the inverse product distributes over the inverse sum in a specific way. We show that completing such a category, in the sense of Section 3.4, produces a distributive restriction category where the product distributes over the coproduct.

### 5.1 Inverse sum categories

#### 5.1.1 Inverse sums

**Definition 5.1.1.** In an inverse category with disjoint joins, an object  $X$  is the *inverse sum* of  $A$  and  $B$  when there exist maps  $i_1, i_2, x_1, x_2$  such that:

- (i)  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  are monic;
- (ii)  $i_1 : A \rightarrow X, i_2 : B \rightarrow X, x_1 : X \rightarrow A$  and  $x_2 : X \rightarrow B$ .
- (iii)  $i_1^{(-1)} = x_1$  and  $i_2^{(-1)} = x_2$ .
- (iv)  $i_1^{(-1)}i_1 \perp i_2^{(-1)}i_2$  and  $i_1^{(-1)}i_1 \sqcup i_2^{(-1)}i_2 = 1_X$ .

$i_1$  and  $i_2$  will be referred to as the *injection* maps of the inverse sum.

**Lemma 5.1.2.** *The inverse sum  $X$  of  $A$  and  $B$  is unique up to isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Assume we have two inverse sums over  $A$  and  $B$ :

$$A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{i_1} \\ \xleftarrow{x_0} \end{array} X \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{i_2} \\ \xrightarrow{x_1} \end{array} B \quad \text{and} \quad A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{j_1} \\ \xleftarrow{y_1} \end{array} Y \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{j_2} \\ \xrightarrow{y_2} \end{array} B.$$

We will show that the map  $x_1 j_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2 : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism.

Note by the fact that  $i_2$  is monic, we may conclude from the definition that  $0 = \overline{x_1 i_1 x_2}$  and therefore  $0 = x_1 i_1 x_2$ . Then, given that  $x_1$  is the inverse of the monic  $i_1$ , we may calculate  $0 = \hat{0} = \widehat{x_2 i_1 x_2} = \overline{x_2^{(-1)} i_1^{(-1)} i_1} = \overline{x_2^{(-1)} i_1^{(-1)}} = \widehat{i_1 x_2}$ . From this we see  $i_1 x_2 = 0$ . Similarly, we have  $i_2 x_2 = 0$ ,  $j_1 y_2 = 0$  and  $j_2 y_1 = 0$ .

Next, by Lemma 4.2.6, we know that  $\overline{x_1} \perp \overline{x_2}$  as both  $i_1$  and  $i_2$  are monic. By the same lemma,  $\hat{j}_1 \perp \hat{j}_2$  as  $y_1, y_2$  are the inverses of monic maps. Then, from [Dis.7], we have  $x_2 j_1 \perp x_2 j_2$ , hence we may form  $x_2 j_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2 : X \rightarrow Y$ .

Similarly, we may form the map  $y_1 i_1 \sqcup y_2 i_2 : Y \rightarrow X$ . Computing their composition:

$$\begin{aligned} (x_2 j_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2)(y_1 i_1 \sqcup y_2 i_2) &= (x_2 j_1(y_1 i_1 \sqcup y_2 i_2)) \sqcup (x_2 j_2(y_1 i_1 \sqcup y_2 i_2)) \\ &= x_2 j_1 y_1 i_1 \sqcup x_2 j_1 y_2 i_2 \sqcup x_2 j_2 y_1 i_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2 y_2 i_2 \\ &= x_2 1 i_1 \sqcup x_2 0 i_2 \sqcup x_2 0 i_1 \sqcup x_2 1 i_2 \\ &= x_2 i_1 \sqcup x_2 i_2 = 1. \end{aligned}$$

Computing the other direction,

$$\begin{aligned} (y_1 i_1 \sqcup y_2 i_2)(x_2 j_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2) &= (y_1 i_1(x_2 j_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2)) \sqcup (y_2 i_2(x_2 j_1 \sqcup x_2 j_2)) \\ &= y_1 i_1 x_2 j_1 \sqcup y_1 i_1 x_2 j_2 \sqcup y_2 i_2 x_2 j_1 \sqcup y_2 i_2 x_2 j_2 \\ &= y_1 1 j_1 \sqcup y_1 0 j_2 \sqcup y_2 0 j_1 \sqcup y_2 1 j_2 \\ &= y_1 j_1 \sqcup y_2 j_2 = 1. \end{aligned}$$

This shows that the map between any two inverse sums over the same two objects is an isomorphism. □

**Definition 5.1.3.** Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with disjoint joins. If every pair of objects has an inverse sum, we call the category an *inverse sum category*. For any two objects  $A, B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ , we write their inverse sum as  $A + B$ .

**Lemma 5.1.4.** Let  $\mathbb{X}$  be an inverse category with a restriction  $0$  and a disjoint sum tensor  $\oplus$ . Then  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category.

*Proof.* We claim that setting  $i_i = \Pi_i$  and  $x_i = \Pi_i^{(-1)}$  and setting  $X = A \oplus B$  produces inverse sums in  $\mathbb{X}$  and show this satisfies the four conditions of Definition 5.1.1.

- (i) From Lemma 4.4.5, we know that  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$  are monic maps.
- (ii)  $\Pi_1 : A \rightarrow A \oplus B$ ,  $\Pi_2 : B \rightarrow A \oplus B$ ,  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} : A \oplus B \rightarrow A$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)} : A \oplus B \rightarrow B$ .
- (iii)  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} = \Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)} = \Pi_2^{(-1)}$ .
- (iv)  $i_1^{(-1)}i_1 = 1 \oplus 0 \perp_{\oplus} 0 \oplus 1 = i_2^{(-1)}i_2$  as  $1 \oplus 0 \nabla 0 \oplus 1 = (u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)} \oplus u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)})$  and  $1 \oplus 0 \triangle 0 \oplus 1 = (\Pi_1^{(-1)} \oplus \Pi_2^{(-1)})$ . For their join,  $(1 \oplus 0) \sqcup_{\oplus} (0 \oplus 1) = (u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)} \oplus u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)})(\Pi_1^{(-1)} \oplus \Pi_2^{(-1)}) = u_{\oplus}^r{}^{(-1)}\Pi_1^{(-1)} \oplus u_{\oplus}^l{}^{(-1)}\Pi_2^{(-1)} = 1 \oplus 1 = 1$ .

□

**Lemma 5.1.5.** If  $A$  is an object in  $\mathbb{X}$ , an inverse sum category, then  $A + 0$  is isomorphic to  $A$ .

*Proof.* We write the inverse sum diagram:

$$A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{1} \\ \xleftarrow{1} \end{array} A \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{0} \\ \xrightarrow{0} \end{array} 0.$$

□

**Lemma 5.1.6.** Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category and  $\mathbb{Y}$  is an inverse category with a restriction zero. Further, suppose  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  is a restriction functor which preserves disjoint joins. Then,  $F$  preserves inverse sums.



*Proof.* In  $\mathbb{X}$ , consider the inverse sum over  $A$  and  $B$ ,

$$A \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{i_1} \\ \xleftarrow{x_0} \end{array} X \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{i_2} \\ \xrightarrow{x_1} \end{array} B .$$

The functor  $F$  maps this as follows:

$$F(A) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{F(i_1)} \\ \xleftarrow{F(x_0)} \end{array} F(X) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{F(i_2)} \\ \xrightarrow{F(x_1)} \end{array} F(B) .$$

As  $F$  is a restriction functor, we immediately have  $F(x_0) = F(i_1^{(-1)}) = F(i_1)^{(-1)}$  and  $F(x_1) = F(i_2)^{(-1)}$ . Since  $F$  preserves the disjoint join, we also have  $F(i_1)^{(-1)}F(i_1) \perp F(i_2)^{(-1)}F(i_2)$  and  $F(i_1)^{(-1)}F(i_1) \sqcup F(i_2)^{(-1)}F(i_2) = 1$ .

Finally, as  $F$  is a restriction functor, it preserves monics, hence  $F(i_1)$  and  $F(i_2)$  are both monic and therefore  $F(X)$  is the inverse sum of  $F(A)$  and  $F(B)$ .

□

**Lemma 5.1.7.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  an inverse sum category and maps  $f : A \rightarrow C$  and  $g : B \rightarrow D$  in  $\mathbb{X}$ . Then  $i_1^{(-1)}fi_1 \perp i_2^{(-1)}gi_2 : A + B \rightarrow A + B$ .*

*Proof.* Note that  $\overline{i_1^{(-1)}fi_1} = \overline{i_1^{(-1)}f} \leq \overline{i_1^{(-1)}}$  and similarly  $\overline{i_2^{(-1)}gi_2} \leq \overline{i_2^{(-1)}}$ . Then, by [Dis.3], we have  $\overline{i_1^{(-1)}fi_1} \perp \overline{i_2^{(-1)}gi_2}$ . As  $\widehat{i_1^{(-1)}fi_1} \leq \widehat{i_1}$  and  $\widehat{i_2^{(-1)}gi_2} \leq \widehat{i_2}$ , we have  $\widehat{i_1^{(-1)}fi_1} \perp \widehat{i_2^{(-1)}gi_2}$  and by Lemma 4.2.6, this means  $i_1^{(-1)}fi_1 \perp i_2^{(-1)}gi_2$ . □

**Lemma 5.1.8.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category. Denote the inverse sum of objects  $A, B$  of  $\mathbb{X}$  by  $A + B$ . Then for objects  $A, B$  and  $X$  with maps  $f : A \rightarrow X$  and  $g : B \rightarrow X$  such that  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$ , there exists a unique map  $h$  making the following diagram commute.*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & & \\ \downarrow i_1 & \searrow f & \\ A + B & \xrightarrow{\quad h \quad} & X \\ \uparrow i_2 & \nearrow g & \\ B & & \end{array}$$

We use the notation  $f \hat{+} g$  for the unique map  $h$ .

*Proof.* As  $\hat{f} \perp \hat{g}$  and  $\overline{i_1^{(-1)}} \perp \overline{i_2^{(-1)}}$  we may form the map  $h' = i_1^{(-1)}f \sqcup i_2^{(-1)}g$ . By its construction,  $h'$  is a map from  $A + B$  to  $X$  which makes the diagram commute. Suppose now that both maps  $v$  and  $w$  are such maps. Then we have

$$(i_1^{(-1)}i_1)v = (i_1^{(-1)}i_1)w \quad \text{and} \quad (i_2^{(-1)}i_2)v = (i_2^{(-1)}i_2)w.$$

As  $i_1^{(-1)}i_1 \perp i_2^{(-1)}i_2$ , by Lemmas 4.2.6 and 4.3.3, we know that  $(i_1^{(-1)}i_1)v \perp (i_2^{(-1)}i_2)v$  and  $(i_1^{(-1)}i_1)w \perp (i_2^{(-1)}i_2)w$  allowing us to form their respective disjoint joins. As the disjoint joins of equal maps remains equal, we have

$$(i_1^{(-1)}i_1)v \sqcup (i_2^{(-1)}i_2)v = (i_1^{(-1)}i_1)w \sqcup (i_2^{(-1)}i_2)w$$

$$(i_1^{(-1)}i_1 \sqcup i_2^{(-1)}i_2)v = (i_1^{(-1)}i_1 \sqcup i_2^{(-1)}i_2)w$$

$$(1)v = (1)w$$

$$v = w.$$

□

**Corollary 5.1.9.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category. Then for objects  $A, B$  and  $X$  with maps  $f : X \rightarrow A$  and  $g : X \rightarrow B$  such that  $\overline{f} \perp \overline{g}$ , there exists a unique map  $h$  making the following diagram commute.*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & A \\ & \nearrow f & \downarrow i_1 \\ X & \xrightarrow{\quad h \quad} & A + B \\ & \searrow g & \uparrow i_2 \\ & & B. \end{array}$$

We use the notation  $f \overline{+} g$  for the unique map  $h$ .

*Proof.* This is simply the dual of Lemma 5.1.8. The unique map  $h$  in this case is  $f i_1 \sqcup g i_2$ . □

**Corollary 5.1.10.** *Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category. Then for objects  $A, B, C$  and  $D$  with maps  $f : A \rightarrow C$  and  $g : B \rightarrow D$ , there exists a unique map  $h$  making the following*

diagram commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
i_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow i_1 \\
A + B & \xrightarrow{h} & C + D \\
i_2 \uparrow & & \uparrow i_2 \\
B & \xrightarrow{g} & D.
\end{array}$$

We use the notation  $f + g$  for the map  $h$ .

*Proof.* This follows directly from Lemma 5.1.8 by setting  $X = C + D$ . The unique map in this case is  $i_1^{(-1)} f i_1 \sqcup i_2^{(-1)} g i_2$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 5.1.11.** *Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $\mathbb{Y}$  are inverse sum categories and  $F : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  is a restriction functor which preserves inverse sums. Then,  $F$  preserves disjoint joins.*

*Proof.* By stating that  $F$  preserves the inverse sum, we mean it preserves diagrams derived via the properties of the inverse sum, and specifically, it will preserve the diagrams of Lemma 5.1.8 and Corollaries 5.1.9 and 5.1.10.

Suppose we are given  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  with  $f \perp g$ . In the inverse sum category, we know that  $f \sqcup g = (\bar{f} i_1 \sqcup \bar{g} i_2)(i_1^{(-1)} f i_1 \sqcup i_2^{(-1)} g i_2)(i_1^{(-1)} \hat{f} \sqcup i_2^{(-1)} \hat{g})$ , as this follows by:

1. Apply Corollary 5.1.9 to  $\bar{f}$  and  $\bar{g}$ ;
2. then apply Corollary 5.1.10 to  $f, g$ ;
3. finally apply Lemma 5.1.8 to  $\hat{f}, \hat{g}$ .

Thus, we have that  $f \sqcup g = (\bar{f} \bar{+} \bar{g})(f + g)(\hat{f} \hat{+} \hat{g})$ . As  $F$  preserves the inverse sum, this gives us:

$$\begin{aligned}
F(f \sqcup g) &= F(\bar{f} \bar{+} \bar{g}) F(f + g) F(\hat{f} \hat{+} \hat{g}) \\
&= (F(\bar{f}) \bar{+} F(\bar{g}))(F(f) + F(g))(F(\hat{f}) \hat{+} F(\hat{g})) \\
&= (\overline{F(f)} \bar{+} \overline{F(g)})(F(f) + F(g))(\widehat{F(f)} \hat{+} \widehat{F(g)}) \\
&= F(f) \sqcup F(g).
\end{aligned}$$

The last line is due to  $\mathbb{Y}$  being an inverse sum category as well.

□

### 5.1.2 Inverse sum tensor

**Definition 5.1.12.** An *inverse sum tensor* in an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with disjoint joins  $\sqcup$  based on a disjointness relation  $\perp$  and a restriction zero is given by a tensor combined with two restriction monics,  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$ . The data for the tensor is:

$$_-\oplus_- : \mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{X} \quad (\text{a restriction functor preserving disjoint joins})$$

$$0 : \mathbf{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$$

$$u_\oplus^l : 0 \oplus A \rightarrow A$$

$$u_\oplus^r : A \oplus 0 \rightarrow A$$

$$a_\oplus : (A \oplus B) \oplus C \rightarrow A \oplus (B \oplus C)$$

$$c_\oplus : A \oplus B \rightarrow B \oplus A$$

$$\Pi_1 : A \rightarrow A \oplus B$$

$$\Pi_2 : B \rightarrow A \oplus B$$

where  $u_\oplus^l, u_\oplus^r, a_\oplus, c_\oplus$  are all isomorphisms and the standard symmetric monoidal equations and coherence diagrams hold. The unit of the tensor,  $0 : \mathbf{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$ , is the restriction zero of the category. We specifically note that preserving disjoint joins means the tensor obeys the following two equations:

$$f \perp g, h \perp k \text{ implies } f \oplus h \perp g \oplus k \tag{5.1}$$

$$f \perp g, h \perp k \text{ implies } (f \sqcup g) \oplus (h \sqcup k) = (f \oplus h) \sqcup (g \oplus k). \tag{5.2}$$

**Lemma 5.1.13.** *Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a disjoint sum tensor  $\oplus$  as in Definition 4.4.12, then  $\oplus$  is an inverse sum tensor.*

*Proof.* From the data of the disjoint sum tensor, the only thing remaining to show is that the tensor preserves the disjoint join.

Suppose we have  $f \perp_{\oplus} g$  and  $h \perp_{\oplus} k$ . From Lemma 4.4.9, item (xi), we know both  $(f \oplus h) \nabla (g \oplus k)$  and  $(f \oplus h) \Delta (g \oplus k)$  exist, hence  $(f \oplus h) \perp_{\oplus} (g \oplus k)$ . This shows Condition (5.1).

For Condition (5.2), we compute from the right hand side:

$$\begin{aligned}
(f \oplus h) \sqcup_{\oplus} (g \oplus k) &= (f \oplus h) \nabla (g \oplus k) \widehat{(f \oplus h) \Delta (g \oplus k)} \\
&= ((f \nabla g) \oplus (h \nabla k)) \left( (\hat{f} \oplus \hat{h}) \Delta (\hat{g} \oplus \hat{k}) \right) \\
&= ((f \nabla g) \oplus (h \nabla k)) \left( (\hat{f} \Delta \hat{g}) \oplus (\hat{h} \Delta \hat{k}) \right) \\
&= \left( (f \nabla g)(\hat{f} \Delta \hat{g}) \right) \oplus \left( (h \nabla k)(\hat{h} \Delta \hat{k}) \right) \\
&= (f \sqcup_{\oplus} g) \oplus (h \sqcup_{\oplus} k).
\end{aligned}$$

The second and third lines above again use Lemma 4.4.9 (xi). □

**Lemma 5.1.14.** *If  $\oplus$  is an inverse sum tensor in the inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , then  $A \oplus B \cong A + B$ , an inverse sum of  $A$  and  $B$ .*

*Proof.* As  $\oplus$  is a restriction functor from  $\mathbb{X} \times \mathbb{X}$  to  $\mathbb{X}$ , this actually follows immediately from Lemma 5.1.6. It may also be proven directly:

Consider the inverse sum diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{i_1 = u_{\oplus}^r \text{ } ^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0)} & A \oplus B & \xleftarrow{i_2 = u_{\oplus}^l \text{ } ^{(-1)}(0 \oplus 1)} & B \\
& \searrow x_0 = (1 \oplus 0)u_{\oplus}^r & & \swarrow x_1 = (0 \oplus 1)u_{\oplus}^l & \\
& & & & 
\end{array}$$

Therefore, we have  $i_1^{(-1)}i_1 = (1 \oplus 0)u_{\oplus}^r u_{\oplus}^r \text{ } ^{(-1)}(1 \oplus 0) = (1 \oplus 0)(1 \oplus 0) = (1 \oplus 0)$ . Similarly,  $i_2^{(-1)}i_2 = (0 \oplus 1)$ . Since  $0 \perp 1$ , we have  $i_1^{(-1)}i_1 \perp i_2^{(-1)}i_2$ .

By the functoriality of  $\oplus$  and that it preserves disjoint joins, we have  $(1 \oplus 0) \sqcup (0 \oplus 1) = (1 \sqcup 0) \oplus (0 \sqcup 1) = 1 \oplus 1 = 1_{A \oplus B}$ . Hence  $A \oplus B$  is an inverse sum of  $A$  and  $B$  and by Lemma 5.1.2 it is isomorphic to  $A + B$ . □

Conversely, we can show that given a tensor which produces inverse sums, that tensor will be an inverse sum tensor.

**Lemma 5.1.15.** *Suppose we have an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with restriction zero, a disjointness relation  $\perp$ , a disjoint join  $\sqcup$  and a symmetric monoidal tensor  $\oplus$ , with natural restriction monics  $\Pi_1 : A \rightarrow A \oplus B$  and  $\Pi_2 : B \rightarrow A \oplus B$ . Further suppose that  $A \oplus B$  is an inverse sum under  $\Pi_1$  and  $\Pi_2$ . When  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  and  $h, k : C \rightarrow D$  with  $f \perp g$  and  $h \perp k$ , then  $f \oplus h \perp g \oplus k$  and  $(f \oplus h) \sqcup (g \oplus k) = (f \sqcup g) \oplus (h \sqcup k)$ .*

*Proof.* Similarly, this follows immediately from Lemma 5.1.11. We show it directly below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & f & & \\
 & \xrightarrow{\quad \bar{f} \quad} & A & \xrightarrow{\quad f \sqcup g \quad} & B \\
 \Pi_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \Pi_1 & & \downarrow \Pi_1 \\
 A \oplus C & \xrightarrow[\quad (1) \quad]{\quad \bar{f} \oplus \bar{h} \quad} & A \oplus C & \xrightarrow[\quad (2) \quad]{\quad f \sqcup g \oplus h \sqcup k \quad} & B \oplus D \\
 \uparrow \Pi_2 & & \uparrow \Pi_2 & & \uparrow \Pi_2 \\
 C & \xrightarrow[\quad \bar{h} \quad]{} & C & \xrightarrow[\quad h \sqcup k \quad]{} & D \\
 & \xrightarrow{\quad h \quad} & & & 
 \end{array} \tag{5.3}$$

Consider  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} \bar{f} \Pi_1$ . As this is idempotent and we are in an inverse category, we know that  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} \bar{f} \Pi_1 = \overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)} \bar{f} \Pi_1} = \overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)} \bar{f}} = \widehat{\bar{f} \Pi_1}$ . Similarly,  $\Pi_2^{(-1)} \bar{h} \Pi_2 = \widehat{\bar{h} \Pi_2}$ . By [Dis.5] and [Dis.6], we know that  $\widehat{\bar{f} \Pi_1} \perp \widehat{\bar{g} \Pi_1}$  and  $\widehat{\bar{h} \Pi_2} \perp \widehat{\bar{k} \Pi_2}$ . As shown in the proof of Lemma 5.1.2, we know  $\widehat{\Pi_1} \perp \widehat{\Pi_2}$ . Hence, by [Dis.3], we have  $\widehat{\bar{x} \Pi_1} \perp \widehat{\bar{y} \Pi_2}$  for any maps  $x, y$ .

Hence, we can form the map  $\widehat{\bar{f} \Pi_1} \sqcup \widehat{\bar{h} \Pi_2}$ . Referring to the Diagram (5.3), by Corollary 5.1.10 there is a unique map at location (1) which makes the diagram commute — currently given as  $\bar{f} \oplus \bar{h}$ . The map  $\widehat{\bar{f} \Pi_1} \sqcup \widehat{\bar{h} \Pi_2}$  also makes the diagram commute. Hence, we have  $\widehat{\bar{f} \Pi_1} \sqcup \widehat{\bar{h} \Pi_2} = \bar{f} \oplus \bar{h}$ . Similarly,  $\widehat{\bar{g} \Pi_1} \sqcup \widehat{\bar{k} \Pi_2} = \bar{g} \oplus \bar{k}$ . By Lemma 4.3.5, this means  $\overline{\bar{f} \oplus \bar{h}} \perp \overline{\bar{g} \oplus \bar{k}}$ .

Using a similar argument based on the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & f & & \\
& \nearrow f \sqcup g & & \searrow f & \\
A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B \\
\downarrow \Pi_1 & & \downarrow \Pi_1 & & \downarrow \Pi_1 \\
A \oplus C & \xrightarrow[\text{(3)}]{f \sqcup g \oplus h \sqcup k} & B \oplus D & \xrightarrow[\text{(4)}]{\hat{f} \oplus \hat{h}} & B \oplus D \\
\uparrow \Pi_2 & & \uparrow \Pi_2 & & \uparrow \Pi_2 \\
C & \xrightarrow{\quad} & D & \xrightarrow{\quad} & D \\
& \searrow h \sqcup k & & \nearrow \hat{h} & \\
& & h & & 
\end{array} \tag{5.4}$$

we can show  $\widehat{f \oplus h} \perp \widehat{g \oplus k}$  and therefore  $f \oplus h \perp g \oplus k$ .

This allows us to form the map  $(f \oplus h) \sqcup (g \oplus k)$ . Once again, as the objects are inverse sums, the map at (3) in Diagram (5.4) is unique. However, we see that both  $f \sqcup g \oplus h \sqcup k$  and  $(f \oplus h) \sqcup (g \oplus k)$  fulfill this requirement and hence they are equal.  $\square$

**Definition 5.1.16.** An inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with restriction zero, a disjointness relation  $\perp$ , a disjoint join  $\sqcup$  and an inverse sum tensor  $\oplus$  is called an *inverse sum tensor category*.

**Corollary 5.1.17.** In an inverse sum tensor category,  $f \oplus g$  is given by  $i_1^{(-1)} f i_1 \sqcup i_2^{(-1)} g i_2$ .

*Proof.* Recall that in the proof of Lemma 5.1.2 that we showed  $\overline{i_1^{(-1)}} \perp \overline{i_2^{(-1)}}$  and  $\hat{i}_1 \perp \hat{i}_2$ . Since  $\overline{x f} \leq \overline{x}$ , by [Dis.3] and [Dis.7], we know that  $i_1^{(-1)} f i_1 \perp i_2^{(-1)} g i_2$  and we can therefore form the disjoint join.  $\square$

### 5.1.3 Matrices

In this Sub-Section, we will show that when given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a disjoint sums, one can define a matrix category based on  $\mathbb{X}$ . We will call this category  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ . Furthermore, we will show that  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse category and that  $\mathbb{X}$  embeds within this category.

The types of matrices allowed in the matrix category are subject to certain constraints:

**Definition 5.1.18.** Suppose we have  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a disjoint sum. Then an *inverse sum matrix* in  $\mathbb{X}$  is a matrix of maps  $[f_{ij}]$  where  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$  and  $j \in \{1, \dots, m\}$  with  $f_{ij} : A_i \rightarrow B_j$  which satisfy the two conditions:

$$\text{For each } i, \perp [f_{ij}\Pi_j]_{j=1,\dots,m} \text{ where } \Pi_j : B_j \rightarrow B_1 \oplus B_2 \oplus \dots \oplus B_m. \quad (5.5)$$

$$\text{For each } j, \perp [\Pi_i^{(-1)}f_{ij}]_{i=1,\dots,n} \text{ where } \Pi_i^{(-1)} = \Pi_i^{(-1)} : A_1 \oplus A_2 \oplus \dots \oplus A_n \rightarrow A_i. \quad (5.6)$$

In the above and following we will use the notation  $\Pi_i$  for the  $i^{\text{th}}$  injection map of the disjoint sum, with  $i$  starting at 1. This simply extends the notation introduced in Definition 4.4.1.

We will show that this type of matrix corresponds to maps in the category  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , where composition is given by “matrix multiplication”, where the operations of multiplication and addition are replaced with composition in  $\mathbb{X}$  and the disjoint join respectively.

**Definition 5.1.19.** Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a disjoint sum tensor, we define the *inverse matrix category* of  $\mathbb{X}$ ,  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , as follows:

**Objects:** Non-empty lists of the objects of  $\mathbb{X}$ ;

**Maps:** Inverse sum matrices  $[f_{ij}] : [A_i] \rightarrow [B_j]$ . In such a matrix each individual map  $f_{ij} : A_i \rightarrow B_j$  is a map in  $\mathbb{X}$ . For each  $j$ ,  $B_j$  is given by applying the map  $\sqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} f_{ij}$  to the object  $\oplus_i A_i$ ;

**Identity:** The inverse sum matrix  $I$ ;

**Composition:** Given  $[f_{ij}] : [A_i] \rightarrow [B_j]$  and  $[g_{jk}] : [B_j] \rightarrow [C_k]$ , then  $[h_{ik}] = [f_{ij}][g_{jk}] : [A_i] \rightarrow [C_k]$  is defined as  $h_{ik} = \sqcup_j f_{ij} g_{jk}$ ;

**Restriction:** We set  $\overline{[f_{ij}]}$  to be  $[f'_{ij}]$  where  $f'_{ij} = 0$  when  $i \neq j$  and  $f'_{ii} = \sqcup_j \overline{f_{ij}}$ .

In the following, we will use the notation  $\text{diag}[d_j]$  for diagonal matrices where the  $j, j$  entry is  $d_j$ .

**Lemma 5.1.20.** When  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category,  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  is a restriction category.



*Proof.* We need to show the following:

- Composition is well defined and associative.
- The restriction is well defined.

*Composition is well defined:* Consider  $[h_{ik}] = [f_{ij}][g_{jk}]$  where  $[f_{ij}] : [A_1, \dots, A_n] \rightarrow [B_1, \dots, B_m]$  and  $[g_{jk}] : [B_1, \dots, B_m] \rightarrow [C_1, \dots, C_\ell]$ . By supposition, we know  $h_{ik} = \sqcup_j f_{ij} g_{jk}$ . As each of the maps are inverse sum matrices, we know that  $\perp [f_{ij} \Pi_j]$  and  $\perp [\Pi_j^{(-1)} g_{jk}]$ . Hence, for each  $j$  we know the composition  $f_{ij} \Pi_j \Pi_j^{(-1)} g_{jk} = f_{ij} g_{jk}$  is defined and from  $A_i$  to  $C_k$ . By the stability and universality of  $\sqcup$ , we know  $h_{ik}$  exists and by the definition of  $\sqcup$ , we have each  $h_{ik} : A_i \rightarrow C_k$  and hence composition is well-defined.

*Associativity of composition.* We have

$$\begin{aligned}
([f_{ij}][g_{jk}])[h_{k\ell}] &= \left[ \left( \sqcup_j f_{ij} g_{jk} \right) \right] [h_{k\ell}] \\
&= \left[ \sqcup_k \left( \sqcup_j f_{ij} g_{jk} \right) h_{k\ell} \right] \\
&= \left[ \sqcup_j f_{ij} \left( \sqcup_k g_{jk} h_{k\ell} \right) \right] \\
&= [f_{ij}][g_{jk}][h_{k\ell}].
\end{aligned}$$

*The restriction axioms.*

$$[\mathbf{R.1}] \quad \overline{[f_{ij}]}[f_{ij}] = \begin{bmatrix} (\sqcup_j \overline{f_{1j}}) f_{11} & \cdots & (\sqcup_j \overline{f_{1j}}) f_{1n} \\ & \vdots & \\ (\sqcup_j \overline{f_{mj}}) f_{m1} & \cdots & (\sqcup_j \overline{f_{mj}}) f_{mn} \end{bmatrix} = [f_{ij}].$$

**[R.2]**  $\overline{[f_{ij}]} \overline{g_{ij}} = \overline{g_{ij}} \overline{[f_{ij}]}$  as diagonal matrices commute and  $\sqcup$  is also commutative.

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{R.3}] \quad \overline{[f_{ij}][g_{jk}]} &= \overline{\text{diag}[\sqcup_j \overline{f_{1j}}, \dots, \sqcup_j \overline{f_{nj}}][g_{jk}]} \\
&= \overline{\begin{bmatrix} \sqcup_j \overline{f_{1j}} g_{11} & \dots & \sqcup_j \overline{f_{1j}} g_{1k} \\ & \vdots & \\ \sqcup_j \overline{f_{nj}} g_{n1} & \dots & \sqcup_j \overline{f_{nj}} g_{nk} \end{bmatrix}} \\
&= \overline{\text{diag}[\sqcup_k (\sqcup_j (\overline{f_{1j}} g_{1k})), \dots, \sqcup_k (\sqcup_j (\overline{f_{nj}} g_{nk}))]} \\
&= \overline{\text{diag}[\sqcup_k (\sqcup_j (\overline{f_{1j}}) \overline{g_{1k}}), \dots, \sqcup_k (\sqcup_j (\overline{f_{nj}}) \overline{g_{nk}})]} \\
&= \overline{\text{diag}[(\sqcup_j (\overline{f_{1j}}) \sqcup_k \overline{g_{1k}}), \dots, (\sqcup_j (\overline{f_{nj}}) \sqcup_k \overline{g_{nk}})]} \\
&= \overline{[f_{ij}][g_{jk}]}.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
[\mathbf{R.4}] \quad [f_{ij}][\overline{g_{jk}}] &= [f_{ij}] \operatorname{diag}_j [\sqcup_k \overline{g_{jk}}] \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} f_{11} \sqcup_k \overline{g_{1k}} & \cdots & f_{1n} \sqcup_k \overline{g_{nk}} \\ & \vdots & \\ f_{m1} \sqcup_k \overline{g_{1k}} & \cdots & f_{mn} \sqcup_k \overline{g_{nk}} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \sqcup_k f_{11} \overline{g_{1k}} & \cdots & \sqcup_k f_{1n} \overline{g_{nk}} \\ & \vdots & \\ \sqcup_k f_{m1} \overline{g_{1k}} & \cdots & \sqcup_k f_{mn} \overline{g_{nk}} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \sqcup_k \overline{f_{11} g_{1k} f_{11}} & \cdots & \sqcup_k \overline{f_{1n} g_{nk} f_{1n}} \\ & \vdots & \\ \sqcup_k \overline{f_{m1} g_{1k} f_{m1}} & \cdots & \sqcup_k \overline{f_{mn} g_{nk} f_{mn}} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \sqcup_j \sqcup_k \overline{f_{1j} g_{jk} f_{11}} & \cdots & \sqcup_j \sqcup_k \overline{f_{1j} g_{jk} f_{1n}} \\ & \vdots & \\ \sqcup_j \sqcup_k \overline{f_{mj} g_{jk} f_{m1}} & \cdots & \sqcup_j \sqcup_k \overline{f_{mj} g_{jk} f_{mn}} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \overline{[f_{ij}][g_{jk}]} [f_{ij}].
\end{aligned}$$

□

Note that when  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a disjoint join,  $i\operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{X})$  is also an inverse category. The inverse of the map  $f = [f_{ij}]$  is the map  $f^{(-1)} := [f_{ji}^{(-1)}]$ . Recalling that the rows and columns of  $f$  are each disjoint, we see that the composition  $f f^{(-1)} = \operatorname{diag}_i [\sqcup_j \overline{f_{ij}}] = \overline{f}$ .

Furthermore,  $i\operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{X})$  is actually an inverse sum category:

**Theorem 5.1.21.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  an inverse category with a disjoint sum tensor and restriction zero,  $i\operatorname{Mat}(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse sum category.*

We will prove this in a series of lemmas.

**Lemma 5.1.22.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse restriction category with a restriction zero and a disjoint join, then  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  has a restriction zero.*

*Proof.* The restriction zero in  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  is the list  $[0]$  where  $0$  is the restriction zero in  $\mathbb{X}$ .

For the object  $A = [A_1, \dots, A_n]$ , the  $0$  map is given by the  $n \times 1$  matrix  $[0, \dots, 0]$ . The

map from  $0$  is given by the  $1 \times n$  matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ .

□

**Lemma 5.1.23.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse restriction category with a restriction zero,  $0$ , and a disjoint join, then the monoid  $\oplus$  defined by list catenation of objects is a disjointness tensor.*

*Proof.* We first note the monoidal isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{\oplus}^l : [0, A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n] &\rightarrow [A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n] & u_{\oplus}^l &:= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ & I_{n \times n} & \\ & & \end{bmatrix} \\ u_{\oplus}^r : [A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n, 0] &\rightarrow [A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n] & u_{\oplus}^r &:= \begin{bmatrix} & I_{n \times n} & \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ a_{\oplus} : (A \oplus B) \oplus C &\rightarrow A \oplus (B \oplus C) & a_{\oplus} &:= id \\ c_{\oplus} : [A_1, \dots, A_n, B_1, \dots, B_m] &\rightarrow [B_1, \dots, B_m, A_1, \dots, A_n] & c_{\oplus} &:= \begin{bmatrix} 0_{m \times n} & I_{n \times n} \\ I_{m \times m} & 0_{n \times m} \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

The action of  $\oplus$  on maps is given by:

$$[f_{ij}] \oplus [g_{\ell k}] = \begin{bmatrix} [f_{ij}] & 0 \\ 0 & [g_{\ell k}] \end{bmatrix}.$$

With this definition, we see that  $\oplus$  is a restriction functor:

$$\begin{aligned} id_X \oplus id_Y &= id_{X \oplus Y}, \\ f_1 g_1 \oplus f_2 g_2 &= h_1 \oplus h_2 = \begin{bmatrix} h_1 & 0 \\ 0 & h_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f_1 & 0 \\ 0 & g_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} f_2 & 0 \\ 0 & g_2 \end{bmatrix} = (f_1 \oplus g_1)(f_2 \oplus g_2). \end{aligned}$$

Following Definition 4.4.1, we note  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} = (1 \oplus 0)u_{\oplus}^r = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$  and similarly

$\Pi_2^{(-1)} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ . Suppose we have  $f = [f_{ij}]$  and  $g = [g_{ij}]$  where  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$  and  $j \in \{1, 2\}$ .

Further suppose  $f\Pi_1^{(-1)} = g\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $f\Pi_1^{(-1)} = g\Pi_1^{(-1)}$ . Therefore,  $f\Pi_1^{(-1)} = [f_{i1}] = [g_{i1}] = g\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} = [f_{i2}] = [g_{i2}] = g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$ , but this means that  $f = g$  and we may conclude  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  are jointly monic. Similarly,  $\Pi_1 = [1 \ 0]$  and  $\Pi_2 = [0 \ 1]$  are jointly epic.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.1.24.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a disjoint join and restriction zero, then  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  has a disjoint sum tensor.*

*Proof.* By Lemma 5.1.23, we know that the tensor defined by list catenation is a disjoint tensor. To show that it is a disjoint sum tensor, we must fulfill Definition 4.4.12.

First, for the diagram below, we show that  $\alpha$  exists if and only if  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} \nabla g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$ . Note that diagram assumes all the solid arrows exist and make the diagram a commutative diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 [A] & & & & \\
 & \searrow \alpha & & \searrow g & \\
 & [X, Y, Z] & \xrightarrow{\Pi_{1,3}^{(-1)}} & [X, Z] & \\
 & \downarrow \Pi_{1,2}^{(-1)} & & \downarrow \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \\
 & [X, Y] & \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} & [X] &
 \end{array}$$

$f$  is the arrow from  $[A]$  to  $[X, Y]$ .

The existence of  $f\Pi_2^{(-1)} \nabla g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  means there is an  $h = [h_1, h_2] : [A] \rightarrow [Y, Z]$  such that  $h\Pi_1^{(-1)} = f\Pi_2^{(-1)}$  and  $h\Pi_2^{(-1)} = g\Pi_2^{(-1)}$ . From the diagram, given that  $f = [f_1, f_2]$  and  $g = [g_1, g_2]$ , we know that  $f_1 = f\Pi_1^{(-1)} = g\Pi_1^{(-1)} = g_1$ . We also have  $h_1 = f_2$  and  $h_2 = g_2$ . If we set  $\alpha$  to the matrix  $[f_1, f_2, g_2]$ , the diagram above commutes. We need only show that

$\alpha$  is a map in  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ . As  $f, g$  and  $h$  are maps in  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , we know that:

$$\begin{aligned} f_1 \Pi_1 &\perp f_2 \Pi_2 \\ f_1 \Pi_1 &= g_1 \Pi_1 \perp g_2 \Pi_2 \\ f_2 \Pi_2 &= h_1 \Pi_1 \perp h_2 \Pi_2 = g_2 \Pi_2. \end{aligned}$$

From this, we can conclude  $\perp [f_1 \Pi_1, f_2 \Pi_2, g_2 \Pi_3]$ .

Conversely, suppose we have an  $\alpha = [\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3]$  that makes the above diagram commute. Then  $h := [\alpha_2, \alpha_3]$  is a map in  $\mathbb{X}$ . Since  $[\alpha_1, \alpha_3] = g$  and  $[\alpha_1, \alpha_2] = f$ , we have  $h \Pi_1^{(-1)} = f \Pi_2^{(-1)}$  and  $h \Pi_2^{(-1)} = g \Pi_2^{(-1)}$ , hence  $h = f \Pi_2^{(-1)} \nabla g \Pi_2^{(-1)}$ .

The proof that  $\beta$  in the diagram below exists if and only if  $\Pi_2 h \triangle \Pi_2 k$  is similar.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & [A] \\ & \nearrow h & \\ [X, Y] & \xrightarrow{\Pi_{1,2}} & [X, Y, Z] \\ \Pi_1 \uparrow & & \uparrow \Pi_{1,3} \\ [X] & \xrightarrow{\Pi_1} & [X, Z] \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{---} \beta \text{---} \\ \text{---} k \text{---} \end{array}$$

□

We are now ready to prove Theorem 5.1.21, that  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse sum category.

*Proof.* By Lemma 5.1.24, we know  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  has a disjoint sum tensor and therefore by Proposition 4.4.19, it has a disjoint join. By Lemmas 5.1.14 and 5.1.13, we know that  $[A, B] = A \oplus B$  is an inverse sum of  $A$  and  $B$  for any two objects in  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , and hence,  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  is an inverse sum category. □

#### 5.1.4 Equivalence between an inverse sum category and its matrix category

In this Sub-Section we will provide restriction functors between an inverse sum category  $\mathbb{X}$  and its matrix category  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ . Furthermore, we will show these functors form an

equivalence between these two categories. That is,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Inverse Sum Cats} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{Disjoint Join Cats.} \\ & \Uparrow & \\ & \text{Matrix} & \end{array}$$

**Definition 5.1.25.** Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category with disjoint join  $\perp$  and restriction zero, define  $M : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow iMat(\mathbb{X})$  by:

$$\text{Objects: } M(A) := [A]$$

$$\text{Maps: } M(f) := [f] - \text{The } 1 \times 1 \text{ matrix with entry } f.$$

**Lemma 5.1.26.** *The map  $M$  from Definition 5.1.25 is a restriction functor.*

*Proof.* From the definition of  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , we have

$$f : A \rightarrow B \text{ if and only if } M(f) : M(A) \rightarrow M(B) \quad ([f] : [A] \rightarrow [B])$$

$$M(id_A) = [id_A] = id_M(A)$$

$$M(fg) = [fg] = [f][g] = M(f)M(g)$$

$$M(\overline{f}) = [\overline{f}] = \overline{[f]} = \overline{M(f)}.$$

□

**Definition 5.1.27.** Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category with disjoint join  $\perp$  and restriction zero 0, and inverse sum tensor  $\oplus$  define  $S : iMat(\mathbb{X}) \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$  by:

$$\text{Objects: } S([A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n]) := A_1 \oplus A_2 \oplus \dots \oplus A_n$$

$$\text{Maps: } S([f_{ij}]) := \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\bigsqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j).$$

**Lemma 5.1.28.** *The map  $S$  from Definition 5.1.27 is a restriction functor.*

*Proof.* From the definition of  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , where  $A = [A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n]$ ,  $B = [B_1, B_2, \dots, B_M]$ ,

and  $f = [f_{ij}]$  we have

$$\begin{aligned}
S(id_A) &= S([id_{A_i}]) = \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\sqcup_j \Pi_j) = id_{S(A)} \\
f : A \rightarrow B &\iff S(f) : S(A) \rightarrow S(B) \iff \\
&\bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\sqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j) : A_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus A_n \rightarrow B_1 \oplus \cdots \oplus B_m \\
M(\overline{f}) &= [\overline{f}] = \overline{[f]} = \overline{M(f)}.
\end{aligned}$$

For composition, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
S(f)S(g) &= (\bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\sqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j))(\bigsqcup_{j'} \Pi_{j'}^{(-1)}(\sqcup_k g_{jk} \Pi_k)) \\
&= \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} \bigsqcup_j \bigsqcup_{j'} f_{ij} \Pi_j \Pi_{j'}^{(-1)}(\sqcup_k g_{jk} \Pi_k) \\
&= \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} \bigsqcup_j f_{ij}(\sqcup_k g_{jk} \Pi_k) \\
&= \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} \bigsqcup_k (\sqcup_j f_{ij} g_{jk} \Pi_k) \\
&= S([\sqcup_j f_{ij} g_{jk}]) \\
&= S(fg).
\end{aligned}$$

□

**Proposition 5.1.29.** *Given an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with a disjoint sum tensor  $\oplus$  and restriction zero, then the categories  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  are equivalent.*

*Proof.* The functors of the equivalence are  $S$  from Definition 5.1.27 and  $M$  from Definition 5.1.25.

First, we see that  $MS : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{X}$  is the identity functor as

$$\text{Objects: } S(M(A)) = S([A]) = A,$$

$$\text{Maps: } S(M(f)) = S([f]) = f.$$



Next, we need to show that there is a natural transformation and isomorphism  $\rho$  such that  $\rho(SM) = I_{iMat(\mathbb{X})}$ . For each object  $[A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n]$ , set  $\rho A = \begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \dots & \Pi_n^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix}$ .

Note that the functor  $SM$  has the following effect:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Objects: } M(S([A_1, \dots, A_n])) &= M(A_1 \oplus \dots \oplus A_n) = [A_1 \oplus \dots \oplus A_n] \\ \text{Maps: } M(S([f_{ij}])) &= M(\bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\bigsqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j)) = [\bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\bigsqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j)]. \end{aligned}$$

We can now draw the commuting naturality square for  $f = [f_{ij}] : [A_i] \rightarrow [B_j]$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} SM([A_i]) = [\oplus_i A_i] & \xrightarrow{\begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \dots & \Pi_n^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix}} & [A_i] \\ \downarrow SM(f) & & \downarrow f \\ SM([B_j]) = [\oplus_j B_j] & \xrightarrow{\begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \dots & \Pi_m^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix}} & [B_j] \end{array}$$

Following the square by the top-right path from  $[\oplus_i A_i]$  to  $[B_j]$ , by the definition of the maps in the category  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , we see each  $B_j = \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} f_{ij}(\oplus_i A_i)$ . Following the left-bottom path, composing  $SM(f)$  with  $\begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \dots & \Pi_m^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix}$  gives us the map

$$\begin{bmatrix} \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\bigsqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j) \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \dots & \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)}(\bigsqcup_j f_{ij} \Pi_j) \Pi_m^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} f_{i1} & \dots & \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} f_{im} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Applying this to  $[\oplus_i A_i]$ , we see each  $B_j = \bigsqcup_i \Pi_i^{(-1)} f_{ij}(\oplus_i A_i)$  and the two directions are equal.

$$\text{Finally, we know that } \rho_{A_i}^{(-1)} = \begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1 \\ \vdots \\ \Pi_n \end{bmatrix} \text{ and defines an isomorphism between any object}$$

of the form  $[\oplus_i A_i]$  and the object  $[A_1, \dots, A_n]$ .  $\square$

**Example 5.1.30.** We may obtain a matrix representative of any map  $f : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$  by applying the construction of Definition 5.1.27 in reverse.

Then given a function  $f : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$  define

$$f_M = \begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1 f \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \Pi_1 f \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\ \Pi_2 f \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \Pi_2 f \Pi_2^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus, applying the functor  $S$  from Definition 5.1.28, we have

$$\begin{aligned} S(f_M) &= \Pi_1^{(-1)}(\Pi_1 f \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 \sqcup \Pi_1 f \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2) \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)}(\Pi_2 f \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 \sqcup \Pi_2 f \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2) \\ &= \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 f (\Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2) \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2 f (\Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2) \\ &= \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 f \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2 f \\ &= (\Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2) f \\ &= f. \end{aligned}$$

In particular, we note that we may represent  $f : A \rightarrow B$  by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1f1 & 1f0 \\ 0f1 & 0f0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} f & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

as  $A \cong A \oplus 0$  and  $B \cong B \oplus 0$ .

**Definition 5.1.31.** A unique decomposition category [25] is a category where any

$$h : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D$$

is uniquely determined by:

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi_1 h \Pi_1^{(-1)} : A &\rightarrow C & \Pi_1 h \Pi_2^{(-1)} : A &\rightarrow D \\ \Pi_2 h \Pi_1^{(-1)} : B &\rightarrow C & \Pi_2 h \Pi_2^{(-1)} : B &\rightarrow D \end{aligned}$$

i.e., is writable as the matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \Pi_1 h \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \Pi_1 h \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\ \Pi_2 h \Pi_1^{(-1)} & \Pi_2 h \Pi_2^{(-1)} \end{bmatrix} : A \oplus B \rightarrow C \oplus D.$$

The 0 map in the category corresponds to the 0-dimensional matrix,

$$0 \xrightarrow{\mathbb{I}} B.$$

**Corollary 5.1.32.** *If  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse sum category, then it is a unique decomposition category.*

## 5.2 Completing a distributive inverse category

### 5.2.1 Distributive restriction categories

**Definition 5.2.1.** A Cartesian category  $\mathbb{B}$  with coproducts is called a *distributive* [9] category when

$$(A \times B) + (A \times C) \cong A \times (B + C).$$

**Definition 5.2.2.** A Cartesian restriction category  $\mathbb{D}$  with a restriction zero and coproducts is called a *distributive restriction category* [16] when there is an isomorphism  $\rho$  such that

$$A \times (B + C) \xrightarrow{\rho} (A \times B) + (A \times C).$$

If  $\mathbb{D}$  is a distributive restriction category, then  $\text{Total}(\mathbb{D})$  is a distributive category as in Definition 5.2.1.

In the following, we will present distributivity in inverse categories.

### 5.2.2 Distributive inverse categories

**Definition 5.2.3.** A *distributive inverse category*  $\mathbb{D}$  consists of the following:

- $\mathbb{D}$  is an inverse category;
- $\mathbb{D}$  has an inverse product with tensor  $\otimes$ , per Definition 3.2.1;
- $\mathbb{D}$  has an inverse sum tensor,  $\oplus$ , per Definition 5.1.12 and

- There is a family of isomorphisms,  $d$ , such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & A \otimes B \\
 & \nearrow^{1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}} & \uparrow \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 A \otimes (B \oplus C) & \xrightarrow{d} & (A \otimes B) \oplus (A \otimes C) \\
 & \searrow_{1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)}} & \downarrow \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\
 & & A \otimes C,
 \end{array} \tag{5.7}$$

commutes in  $\mathbb{D}$  for any choices of objects  $A, B, C$ .

**Example 5.2.4** (PINJ is a distributive inverse category). The isomorphism  $d$  of Diagram (5.7) is given by the following:

$$d((a, (x, n))) = \begin{cases} ((a, x), 1) & n = 1 \\ ((a, x), 2) & n = 2. \end{cases} \tag{5.8}$$

Note that as we are operating in an inverse category, we also have the inverse of diagram (5.7) available to us. That is,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \otimes B & & \\
 \Pi_1 \downarrow & \searrow^{1 \otimes \Pi_1} & \\
 (A \otimes B) \oplus (A \otimes C) & \xrightarrow{d^{(-1)}} & A \otimes (B \oplus C) \\
 \Pi_2 \uparrow & \nearrow_{1 \otimes \Pi_2} & \\
 A \otimes C & &
 \end{array} \tag{5.9}$$

is also a commuting diagram in  $\mathbb{D}$ .

**Definition 5.2.5.** Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category with a disjoint join tensor  $\oplus$  and a restriction zero. Then for maps  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : A \rightarrow C$  with  $\bar{f} \perp \bar{g}$ , define the map  $[f, g] : A \rightarrow B \oplus C$  as  $(f\Pi_1) \sqcup (g\Pi_2)$ . This is well defined as  $\widehat{\Pi_1} \perp \widehat{\Pi_2}$  and therefore by [Dis.7],  $f\Pi_1 \perp g\Pi_2$ .

**Lemma 5.2.6.** Suppose  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  with:

- a disjoint join tensor  $\oplus$ ,

- a restriction zero, and
- an inverse product tensor  $\otimes$  which distributes over disjoint joins, (that is,  $f \otimes (g \sqcup h) = (f \otimes g) \sqcup (f \otimes h)$ ).

Then,  $\mathbb{X}$  is an inverse distributive category.

*Proof.* By assumption, we have the first three items of Definition 5.2.3. Therefore, we need to construct an isomorphism  $d$  such that diagram (5.7) commutes. We claim that the map  $d = [1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}, 1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)}]$  does this.

First, note that the typing of  $d$  is correct. By Definition 5.2.5,

$$d = ((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1) \sqcup ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2) : A \otimes (B \oplus C) \rightarrow (A \otimes B) \oplus (A \otimes C)$$

as

$$\begin{aligned} A \otimes (B \oplus C) &\xrightarrow{(1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})} A \otimes B \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} (A \otimes B) \oplus (A \otimes C), \\ A \otimes (B \oplus C) &\xrightarrow{(1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})} A \otimes C \xrightarrow{\Pi_2^{(-1)}} (A \otimes B) \oplus (A \otimes C). \end{aligned}$$

Next, we need to show  $d$  is an isomorphism. We will do this by showing both  $\bar{d} = 1$  and  $\overline{d^{(-1)}} = 1$ . As a consequence of Lemma 4.3.3, we know the inverse of  $d$  is

$$((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1)^{(-1)} \sqcup ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2)^{(-1)} = (\Pi_1^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_1)) \sqcup (\Pi_2^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_2)).$$

Having  $\otimes$  distribute over the disjoint sum means that for any maps  $f, h, k$  with  $h \perp k$ , we have  $f \otimes (h \sqcup k) = (f \otimes h) \sqcup (f \otimes k)$ . We use this in the calculation of the restriction of  $f$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1) \sqcup ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2)} &= \overline{((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1)} \sqcup \overline{((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2)} \\ &= (1 \otimes \overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}}) \sqcup (1 \otimes \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}}) \\ &= (1 \otimes (\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} \sqcup \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}})) \\ &= 1 \otimes ((1 \oplus 0) \sqcup (0 \oplus 1)) \\ &= 1 \otimes 1 = 1 \end{aligned}$$

and for the inverse,

$$\begin{aligned}
\overline{(\Pi_1^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_1)) \sqcup (\Pi_2^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_2))} &= \overline{(\Pi_1^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_1))} \sqcup \overline{(\Pi_2^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_2))} \\
&= \overline{(\Pi_1^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_1))} \sqcup \overline{(\Pi_2^{(-1)}(1 \otimes \Pi_2))} \\
&= \overline{(\Pi_1^{(-1)})} \sqcup \overline{(\Pi_2^{(-1)})} \\
&= (1 \oplus 0) \sqcup (0 \oplus 1) \\
&= 1.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $[1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}, 1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)}]$  is an isomorphism. Finally, we must show that diagram (5.7) commutes:

$$\begin{aligned}
d\Pi_1^{(-1)} &= \left( ((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1) \sqcup ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2) \right) \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
&= \left( ((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1)\Pi_1^{(-1)} \right) \sqcup \left( ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2)\Pi_1^{(-1)} \right) \\
&= \left( (1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})1 \right) \sqcup \left( (1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})0 \right) \\
&= (1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}) \sqcup 0 \\
&= 1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
d\Pi_2^{(-1)} &= \left( ((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1) \sqcup ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2) \right) \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\
&= \left( ((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})\Pi_1)\Pi_2^{(-1)} \right) \sqcup \left( ((1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})\Pi_2)\Pi_2^{(-1)} \right) \\
&= 0 \sqcup (1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)}) \\
&= 1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)}.
\end{aligned}$$

This shows the fourth condition is satisfied and  $\mathbb{X}$  is a distributive inverse category.  $\square$

We have seen that a second tensor distributing over the disjoint joins implies that we have an inverse distributive category. We now show the converse is true.

**Lemma 5.2.7.** *Given an inverse distributive category  $\mathbb{X}$ , then  $h \otimes (f \nabla g) = (h \otimes f) \nabla (h \otimes g)$  whenever  $f \nabla g$  exists and  $h \otimes (f \triangle g) = (h \otimes f) \triangle (h \otimes g)$  whenever  $f \triangle g$  exists.*

*Proof.* Let  $h : A \rightarrow C$ ,  $f : B \rightarrow D$  and  $g : B \rightarrow E$ . Consider the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & & B \otimes E \\
 & & & \nearrow h \otimes f & \\
 & & & & \uparrow \Pi_1^{(-1)} \\
 A \otimes C & \xrightarrow{h \otimes (f \nabla g)} & B \otimes (D \oplus E) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & (B \otimes D) \oplus (B \otimes E) \\
 & \searrow h \otimes g & \nwarrow 1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)} & & \downarrow \Pi_2^{(-1)} \\
 & & & & B \otimes D.
 \end{array}$$

The two leftmost triangles commute by the diagram for  $f \nabla g$ . The right hand triangles commute as per Definition 5.2.3. By the uniqueness of the  $\nabla$  operation we see  $h \otimes (f \nabla g) = (h \otimes f) \nabla (h \otimes g)$ ,

The argument for showing  $h \otimes (f \triangle g) = (h \otimes f) \triangle (h \otimes g)$  follows the same pattern.  $\square$

**Lemma 5.2.8.** *Given an inverse distributive category  $\mathbb{X}$ , then  $\otimes$  distributes over the disjoint join.*

*Proof.* First recall the definition of  $f \sqcup g = (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})(f \triangle g)$ . In order to show  $h \otimes (f \sqcup g) = (h \otimes f) \sqcup (h \otimes g)$ , we need to show that

$$h \otimes (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})(f \triangle g) = (\overline{h \otimes f} \nabla \overline{h \otimes g})(h \otimes f \triangle h \otimes g). \quad (5.10)$$

Since  $h \otimes (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g})(f \triangle g) = (\bar{h} \otimes (\bar{f} \nabla \bar{g}))(h \otimes (f \triangle g))$ , Equation (5.10) follows directly from Lemma 5.2.7 and the fact that  $\otimes$  is a restriction functor.  $\square$

**Corollary 5.2.9.** *Suppose we have an inverse distributive category  $\mathbb{X}$ . Then,*

- (i) *if  $f \perp g$ , then  $h \otimes f \perp h \otimes g$  for any  $h$ ,*
- (ii) *if  $f \perp g : A \rightarrow B$  and  $h \perp k : C \rightarrow D$ , then  $(f \otimes h) \perp (g \otimes k)$ .*

*Proof.*

- (i) As  $f \perp g$ , we have  $f \triangle g$  and  $f \nabla g$ . By Lemma 5.2.7, both  $h \otimes f \triangle h \otimes g$  and  $h \otimes f \nabla h \otimes g$  exist and therefore  $h \otimes f \perp h \otimes g$ .
- (ii) By the previous item, we have that  $((f \sqcup g) \otimes h) \perp ((f \sqcup g) \otimes k)$ . Then, by [DJ.1] and [Dis.3] we have  $(f \otimes h) \perp (g \otimes k)$ .

□

### 5.2.3 Discrete inverse categories with inverse sums

We now consider the case where we have a discrete inverse category with inverse product tensor  $\otimes$  and a disjoint join tensor  $\oplus$ , with the  $\otimes$  tensor preserves the disjoint join.

A map in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is related to a map in  $\mathbb{X}$  in the following way:

$$\frac{A \xrightarrow{(f,C)} B \text{ in } \tilde{\mathbb{X}}}{A \xrightarrow{f} B \otimes C \text{ in } \mathbb{X}}.$$

Our goal is to show that an inverse sum in a distributive inverse category becomes a co-product in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

**Lemma 5.2.10.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is a distributive inverse category, then  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , the discrete inverse category created from  $\mathbb{X}$ , has a restriction zero.*

*Proof.* Recall from Theorem 3.4.18 that  $\mathbb{X}$  is equivalent as a category to  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  under the identity on objects functor

$$\mathbf{T} : \mathbb{X} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathbb{X}}; \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & & A \\ \downarrow f & \mapsto & \downarrow (f u_{\otimes}^{r(-1),1}) \\ B & & B \end{array}$$

In  $\mathbb{X}$ , we know 0 is a terminal and initial object, with maps  $A \xrightarrow{t_A} 0$  and  $0 \xrightarrow{z_A} A$ , where  $\overline{0_{A,A}} = 0_{A,A} = t_A z_A$ .

First we note that 0 is both initial and terminal in  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , with the terminal maps being  $\mathbf{T}(t_A)$  and initial maps being  $\mathbf{T}(z_A)$ .



As was also shown in Theorem 3.4.18,  $\mathbf{T}$  is a restriction functor, so in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  we have

$$0_{A,A} = \mathbf{T}(t_A)\mathbf{T}(z_A) = \mathbf{T}(t_A z_A) = \mathbf{T}(0_{A,A}) = \mathbf{T}(\overline{0_{A,A}}) = \overline{\mathbf{T}(0_{A,A})} = \overline{0_{A,A}}.$$

Hence,  $0_{A,A}$  is a restriction zero in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ . □

**Lemma 5.2.11.** *In a distributive inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$ , the following hold:*

- (i) *Given  $f : A \rightarrow Y \otimes C$ , we can construct  $f' : A \rightarrow Y \otimes (C \oplus D)$  for some object  $D$  such that  $f \simeq f'$ .*
- (ii) *Given  $g : B \rightarrow Y \otimes D$ , we can construct  $g'' : B \rightarrow Y \otimes (C \oplus D)$  for some object  $C$  such that  $g \simeq g''$ .*
- (iii) *Given  $f : A \rightarrow Y \otimes C$ ,  $g : B \rightarrow Y \otimes D$ , then the  $f', g''$  as constructed in (i) and (ii) satisfies  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \perp \Pi_2^{(-1)} g''$ , where  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} f', \Pi_2^{(-1)} g'' : A \oplus B \rightarrow Y \otimes (C \oplus D)$ .*

*Proof.*

- (i) Set  $f' = f(1 \otimes \Pi_1)$ . To show  $f \equiv f'$ , we must first show their restriction is the same.

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{f(1 \otimes \Pi_1)} &= \overline{\overline{f(1 \otimes \Pi_1)}} \\ &= \overline{f} \overline{1} \\ &= \overline{f} \end{aligned}$$

Now we detail the mediating map between  $f$  and  $f'$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & Y \otimes C & \xrightarrow{\Delta \otimes 1} & Y \otimes (Y \otimes C) \\
 & \nearrow f & & & \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes \Pi_1 \\
 A & & & & Y \otimes Y \otimes (C \oplus D) \\
 & \searrow f' & & \nwarrow \Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1 & \\
 & & Y \otimes (C \oplus D) \otimes X & & 
 \end{array}$$

To show this commutes, we primarily use that  $\Delta\Delta^{(-1)} = 1$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & f(\Delta \otimes 1)(1 \otimes 1 \otimes \Pi_1)(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes 1) \\
 &= f(\Delta \otimes 1)(\Delta^{(-1)} \otimes \Pi_1) \\
 &= f(1 \otimes \Pi_1) \\
 &= f'
 \end{aligned}$$

and hence  $f \stackrel{h}{\simeq} f'$  where  $h = (1 \otimes \Pi_1)$ .

(ii) For this item, we set  $g'' = g(1 \otimes \Pi_2)$ . The proof that  $g \stackrel{k}{\simeq} g''$ , where  $k = (1 \otimes \Pi_2)$  is done in the same way as the previous point.

(iii) In order to show  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \perp \Pi_2^{(-1)} g''$ , we will proceed by showing their restrictions and ranges are disjoint. As  $\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}} \perp \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}}$  and  $\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)} f'} \leq \overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)}}$  and  $\overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)} g''} \leq \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)}}$ , we immediately have  $\overline{\Pi_1^{(-1)} f'} \perp \overline{\Pi_2^{(-1)} g''}$ .

For the ranges, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Pi_1^{(-1)} \widehat{(f(1 \otimes \Pi_1))} &= \overline{((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}) f^{(-1)}) \Pi_1} \\
 &= \overline{((1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)}) f^{(-1)})} \\
 &\leq \overline{(1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})}
 \end{aligned}$$

and similarly

$$\widehat{\Pi_2^{(-1)}g''} \leq \overline{(1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})}.$$

Using Lemma 4.2.6 we know that  $\overline{(\Pi_1^{(-1)})} \perp \overline{(\Pi_2^{(-1)})}$ . From Corollary 5.2.9 we conclude that  $\overline{(1 \otimes \Pi_1^{(-1)})} \perp \overline{(1 \otimes \Pi_2^{(-1)})}$  and giving us  $\widehat{\Pi_1^{(-1)}f'} \perp \widehat{\Pi_2^{(-1)}g''}$  and therefore  $\Pi_1^{(-1)}f' \perp \Pi_2^{(-1)}g''$ .

□

**Proposition 5.2.12.** *Given  $\mathbb{X}$  is an distributive inverse category, then the category  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  has co-products.*

*Proof.* The tensor object,  $A \oplus B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  will become the co-product of  $A, B$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .

The injection maps of the co-product are  $i_1 = (\Pi_1 u_{\otimes}^r, 1)$  and  $i_2 = (\Pi_2 u_{\otimes}^r, 1)$ .

Consider the following diagram in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & & & & \\ & \searrow^{(f,C)} & & & \\ & i_1 \searrow & & & \\ & & A \oplus B & \xrightarrow{\dots h \dots} & Y. \\ & i_2 \nearrow & & & \\ B & \nearrow^{(g,D)} & & & \end{array}$$

In  $\mathbb{X}$ , this comes from the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \otimes C \\ & \searrow \Pi_1 & \\ & & A \oplus B \\ & \nearrow \Pi_2 & \\ B & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \otimes D \end{array} \tag{5.11}$$

where the extraneous unit isomorphisms are removed.

This corresponds to the conditions of Lemma 5.2.11. Hence by that lemma we may revise

Diagram (5.11) as

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & & \\
 \downarrow \Pi_1 & \searrow f' & \\
 A \oplus B & \xrightarrow{\Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} g''} & Y \otimes (C \oplus D) \\
 \uparrow \Pi_2 & \nearrow g'' & \\
 B & & 
 \end{array} \tag{5.12}$$

where  $f'$  and  $g''$  are respectively equivalent to  $f, g$ .

Lifting Diagram (5.12) to  $\mathbb{X}$ , we see this corresponds to the desired co-product diagram, where  $h$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is the map  $(\Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} g'', (C \oplus D))$ .

By construction, in  $\mathbb{X}$ , we have

$$\Pi_1(\Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \sqcup \Pi_1 \Pi_2^{(-1)} g'') = (\Pi_1 \Pi_1^{(-1)} f') \sqcup (\Pi_1 \Pi_2^{(-1)} g'') = f' \sqcup 0 = f'$$

and

$$\Pi_2(\Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \sqcup \Pi_1 \Pi_2^{(-1)} g'') = g''.$$

Hence, in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , we have  $(i_1 u_\otimes^r, 1)h = f$  and  $(i_2 u_\otimes^r, 1)h = g$ .

All that remains to be shown is that  $h$  is unique.

Suppose there is another  $(k, E)$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  such that it satisfies the coproduct properties, i.e., that  $i_1(k, E) = (f', C \oplus D)$  and  $i_2(k, E) = (g'', C \oplus D)$ . In  $\mathbb{X}$ ,  $k : A \oplus B \rightarrow Y \otimes E$  and we have

$$\Pi_1 k \overset{x}{\simeq} f' \quad \text{and}$$

$$\Pi_2 k \overset{y}{\simeq} g''$$

where the maps  $x, y : Y \otimes E \rightarrow Y \otimes (C \oplus D)$  fulfill the respective equivalence diagrams.

The above gives us  $\Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 k \simeq \Pi_1^{(-1)} f'$  and  $\Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2 k \simeq \Pi_2^{(-1)} g''$ . As we know that  $\otimes$  preserves the disjoint join, and the equivalence diagrams consist of maps under  $\otimes$ , we now

have:

$$\begin{aligned}
h &= \Pi_1^{(-1)} f' \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} g'' \\
&\simeq \Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 k \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2 k \\
&= (\Pi_1^{(-1)} \Pi_1 \sqcup \Pi_2^{(-1)} \Pi_2) k \\
&= 1k = k.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence,  $h \simeq k$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  and  $(h, C \oplus D) = (k, E)$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ , meaning  $A \oplus B$  in  $\mathbb{X}$  is the co-product of  $A$  and  $B$  in  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 5.2.13.** *When  $\mathbb{X}$  is a distributive inverse category,  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a distributive restriction category.*

*Proof.* As  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  has restriction products by Lemma 3.4.10, restriction co-products by Theorem 5.2.12 and the equations for distributivity follow directly from the distributivity of the base tensors, we see  $\widetilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a distributive restriction category.  $\square$

# Chapter 6

## Conclusions and future work

This thesis has studied inverse categories [14], providing conditions for a tensor to act like a product — the inverse product — and similarly for a second tensor to behave like a sum — the inverse sum.

The following are the main results of this thesis.

### 1. Inverse Categories

We showed in Proposition 3.1.3 that an inverse category with restriction products is a restriction pre-order. Similarly, in Proposition 4.1.5, an inverse category with coproducts is a pre-order.

### 2. Discrete Inverse Categories

We introduced the inverse product, Definition 3.2.1 and showed that this provided meets for the inverse category in Proposition 3.2.6. We showed that the inverse sub-category of a discrete Cartesian restriction category is a Discrete Inverse Category in Lemma 3.2.8. Commutative Frobenius Algebras are given as an example of a discrete inverse category.

We then provided an equivalence relation on the maps of a discrete inverse category  $\mathbb{X}$  in Definition 3.4.2. This allowed us to introduce the category  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  constructed from  $\mathbb{X}$  by using the equivalence relation to generate more maps between each object in Definition 3.4.1. In Lemmas 3.4.6 and 3.4.7 we showed  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a restriction category and in Theorem 3.4.11 we showed it is in fact a discrete Cartesian restriction category.

Finally, in Theorem 3.4.18 we provided an equivalence functor between the

categories of discrete inverse categories and discrete Cartesian restriction categories.

### 3. Disjointness Relations and Disjoint Joins

In Definition 4.2.4 we defined what a disjointness relation is in an inverse category, followed by Definition 4.2.7 which defined disjointness on the restriction idempotents of the inverse category. Theorem 4.2.11 shows that these two definitions are equivalent, allowing us to define disjointness in whichever way is most convenient.

Disjoint joins are introduced with Definition 4.3.1, providing a correspondence to joins in a restriction category.

In Section 4.4 we explore the properties a symmetric monoidal tensor on an inverse category requires in order to generate a disjointness relation and a disjoint join. These are referred to as disjoint join tensors.

We show that in the category of commutative Frobenius algebras that  $\Delta(f \otimes g)\Delta^{(-1)} = 0$  gives a disjointness relation.

### 4. Inverse Sum Categories

Inverse sum categories are given by inverse categories that have a disjoint join tensor. We define  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$ , a matrix category over the inverse sum category  $\mathbb{X}$  in Definition 5.1.19 and show that it is an inverse sum category in Theorem 5.1.21. Furthermore, we show that an inverse sum category  $\mathbb{X}$  is equivalent to a  $iMat(\mathbb{X})$  in Proposition 5.1.29.

### 5. Distributive Inverse Categories

We define distributive inverse categories in Definition 5.2.3 and show that distributivity of the inverse product over the disjoint join is equivalent to distributing over an inverse sum tensor in Lemma 5.2.8.

Then, in Theorem 5.2.12 we show that the  $\mathbf{T}$  construction of Section 3.4.2 lifts an inverse sum tensor into a coproduct. From this we conclude that  $\tilde{\mathbb{X}}$  is a distributive restriction category in Corollary 5.2.13.

## 6.1 Whither next?

The obvious next step is to apply these results to existing reversible languages such as **Inv** [39], and the pair  $\Pi^0$ , [27] and  $\Pi$ , [26]. In each case, there do not appear to be any issues in doing this work, it simply requires careful attention to the language definitions.

A more interesting direction, in my opinion, would be to further investigate the work on reversible CCS as in [20] and [42]. This could be combined with the work of Chakraborty on MPL [8] to describe the communication of multiple processes and generalize that to a series of reversible processes.

A third direction would be to formalize types in reversible languages using the results of this thesis as a basis. The obvious correspondences are from product types to the inverse product and between sum types and the inverse sum. From there, one would study the trace and explore infinite and recursive types. Note that some of this work would follow naturally from exploring the semantics of  $\Pi^0$  and  $\Pi$  from [26, 27].



# Bibliography

- [1] S. Abramsky. Abstract scalars, loops, and free traced and strongly compact closed categories. In *CALCO*, pages 1–29, 2005.
- [2] S. Abramsky. A structural approach to reversible computation. *Theoretical Computer Science*, 347(3):441–464, 2005.
- [3] S. Abramsky and B. Coecke. A categorical semantics of quantum protocols. In *Proceedings of the 19th Annual IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LiCS'04)*, IEEE Computer Science Press. (extended version at *arXiv:quant-ph/0402130*), pages 415–425, 2004.
- [4] S. Abramsky, E. Haghverdi, and P. Scott. Geometry of interaction and linear combinatory algebras. *Mathematical Structures in Computer Sciences*, 12:625–665, 2002.
- [5] Michael Barr and Charles Wells. *Category Theory for Computing Science*. Prentice Hall, 2nd edition, 1995.
- [6] Charles H. Bennet. Logical reversibility of computation. *IBM Journal of Research and Development*, 6:525–532, 1973.
- [7] Tim Bray, Jean Paoli, C. M. Sperberg-McQueen, Eve Maler, and François Yergeau. Extensible markup language (xml) 1.0. Technical Report REC-xml-20081126, W3C, 2008.
- [8] Subashis Chakraborty. The type system for the message passing language mpl. Master’s thesis, University of Calgary, University of Calgary, 2500 University Drive N.W., Calgary, Alberta, Canada T2N 1N4, 1 2014. Available at [http://pages.cpsc.ucalgary.ca/~robin/Theses/ucalgary\\_2014\\_chakraborty\\_subashis.pdf](http://pages.cpsc.ucalgary.ca/~robin/Theses/ucalgary_2014_chakraborty_subashis.pdf).
- [9] J. Robin B. Cockett. Introduction to distributive categories. *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science*, 3(3):277–307, 1993.
- [10] J.R.B. Cockett and X. Guo. Join restriction categories and the importance of being adhesive. Slides for talk at CT 2007, available at <http://pages.cpsc.ucalgary.ca/~robin>, July 2007.
- [11] J.R.B. Cockett, Xiuzhan Guo, and Pieter Hofstra. Range categories i: General theory. *Theory and Applications of Categories*, 26(17):412–452, 2012.
- [12] J.R.B. Cockett, Xiuzhan Guo, and Pieter Hofstra. Range categories ii: Towards regularity. *Theory and Applications of Categories*, 26(18):453–500, 2012.
- [13] Robin Cockett. Category theory for computer science. Available at <http://pages.cpsc.ucalgary.ca/~robin/class/617/notes.pdf>, October 2009.
- [14] Robin Cockett and Stephen Lack. Restriction categories I: categories of partial maps. *Theoretical Computer Science*, 270:223–259, 2002.

- [15] Robin Cockett and Stephen Lack. Restriction categories II: Partial map classification. *Theoretical Computer Science*, 294:61–102, 2003.
- [16] Robin Cockett and Stephen Lack. Restriction categories III: colimits, partial limits, and extensivity. *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science*, 17(4):775–817, 2007. Available at <http://au.arxiv.org/abs/math/0610500v1>.
- [17] Robin Cockett and Ernie Manes. Boolean and classical restriction categories. *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science*, 19:357–416, April 2009.
- [18] Bob Coecke, Eric O. Paquette, and Duško Pavlović. Classical and quantum structures. Technical Report RR-08-02, Oxford University Computing Laboratory, 2008.
- [19] Bob Coecke, Duško Pavlović, and Jamie Vicary. A new description of orthogonal bases. *Math. Structures in Comp. Sci.*, page 13, 2008. 13pp, to appear, [arxiv.org/abs/0810.0812](http://arxiv.org/abs/0810.0812).
- [20] Vincent Danos and Jean Krivine. Reversible communicating systems. In *CONCUR 2004-Concurrency Theory*, pages 292–307. Springer, 2004.
- [21] Brett Giles. Programming with a quantum stack. Master’s thesis, University of Calgary, University of Calgary, 2500 University Drive N.W., Calgary, Alberta, Canada T2N 1N4, 4 2007. Available at <http://pages.cpsc.ucalgary.ca/~robin/Theses/BrettGilesMSc.pdf>.
- [22] Alexander S. Green, Peter LeFanu Lumsdaine, Neil J. Ross, Peter Selinger, and Benoît Valiron. An introduction to quantum programming in quipper. In *Reversible Computation*, pages 110–124. Springer, 2013.
- [23] Alexander S. Green, Peter LeFanu Lumsdaine, Neil J. Ross, Peter Selinger, and Benoît Valiron. Quipper: a scalable quantum programming language. In *ACM SIGPLAN Notices*, volume 48, pages 333–342. ACM, 2013.
- [24] Xiuzhan Guo. *Products, Joins, Meets, and Ranges in Restriction Categories*. PhD thesis, University of Calgary, April 2012.
- [25] E. Haghverdi. *A Categorical Approach to Linear Logic, Geometry of Proofs and Full Completeness*. PhD thesis, University of Ottawa, 1 February 2000.
- [26] Roshan P. James and Amr Sabry. Information effects. In *ACM SIGPLAN Notices*, volume 47, pages 73–84. ACM, 2012.
- [27] Roshan P. James and Amr Sabry. Isomorphic interpreters from logically reversible abstract machines. In *Reversible Computation*, pages 57–71. Springer, 2013.
- [28] Roshan P. James and Amr Sabry. Theseus: A high level language for reversible computing. Work-in-progress report in the Conference on Reversible Computation, 2014. Available at <http://www.cs.indiana.edu/~sabry/papers/theseus.pdf>, 2014.

- [29] André Joyal and Ross Street. The geometry of tensor calculus i. *Advances in Mathematics*, 88(1):55–122, July 1991.
- [30] Shinya Kawanaka and Haruo Hosoya. bixid: a bidirectional transformation language for xml. In *ACM SIGPLAN Notices*, volume 41, pages 201–214. ACM, 2006.
- [31] Joachim Kock. *Frobenius Algebras and 2D Topological Quantum Field Theories*. Number 59 in London Mathematical Society Student Texts. Cambridge University Press, 2004.
- [32] Serge Lang. *Algebra*. Springer-Verlag, Yale University, revised third edition edition, 2002. ISBN 0-387-95385-X.
- [33] Christopher Lutz and H. Derby. Janus: a time-reversible language. A letter to Landauer, 1986.
- [34] Saunders Mac Lane. *Categories for the Working Mathematician*. Springer Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, Germany, second edition, 1997. ISBN 0-387-98403-8. Dewey QA169.M33 1998.
- [35] Robin Milner. A calculus of communicating systems. 1980.
- [36] Robin Milner. *Communication and concurrency*. Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1989.
- [37] Carroll Morgan and Annabelle McIver. pGCL: Formal reasoning for random algorithms. *South African Computer Journal*, 22:14–27, 1999.
- [38] Shin-Cheng Mu, Zhenjiang Hu, and Masato Takeichi. An algebraic approach to bidirectional updating. In *Proceedings of the Second Asian Symposium, APLAS 2004, Taipei, Taiwan, November 4-6, 2004.*, volume 3302, pages 2–20. Springer Lecture Notes in Computer Science, 2004.
- [39] Shin-Cheng Mu, Zhenjiang Hu, and Masato Takeichi. *An Injective Language for Reversible Computation*, volume 3125 of *Lecture Notes in Computer Science*, pages 289–313. Springer Berlin, 2004.
- [40] Michael A. Nielsen and Isaac L. Chuang. *Quantum Computation and Quantum Information*. Cambridge University Press, The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK, 2000. ISBN 0 521 63235 8.
- [41] Simon Peyton Jones, editor. *Haskell 98 Language and Libraries*. Cambridge University Press, The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, United Kingdom, 2003. ISBN-13: 9780521826143.
- [42] Iain Phillips and Irek Ulidowski. Operational semantics of reversibility in process algebra. *Electronic Notes in Theoretical Computer Science*, 162:281–286, 2006.

- [43] Alessandra Di Pierro, Chris Hankin, and Herbert Wiklicky. On reversible combinatory logic. *Electronic Notes in Theoretical Computer Science*, 135(3):25 – 35, 2006. Proceedings of the First International Workshop on Developments in Computational Models (DCM 2005) Developments in Computational Models 2005.
- [44] J. Sanders and P. Zuliani. Quantum programming. In *Mathematics of Program Construction*, volume 1837 of *LNCIS*, pages 80–99. Springer, 2000.
- [45] Peter Selinger. Towards a quantum programming language. *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science*, 14(4):527–586, 2004.
- [46] Peter Selinger. Towards a semantics for higher-order quantum computation. In *Proceedings of the 2nd International Workshop on Quantum Programming Languages, Turku, Finland*, pages 127–143. TUCS General Publication No. 33, June 2004.
- [47] Peter Selinger. Dagger compact closed categories and completely positive maps. In *Proceedings of the 3rd International Workshop on Quantum Programming Languages, Chicago*, 2005.
- [48] Peter Selinger. A survey of graphical languages for monoidal categories. In *New structures for physics*, pages 289–355. Springer, 2011.
- [49] Various. nlab and n-category cafe. <http://nlab.mathforge.org/nlab/show/HomePage>, 2014.
- [50] P. Zuliani. Logical reversibility. *IBM Journal of Research and Development*, 45(6):807–818, November 2001.